

FreeBSD Porter's Handbook

The FreeBSD Documentation Project

FreeBSD Porter's Handbook

by The FreeBSD Documentation Project

Published April 2000

Copyright © 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013 The FreeBSD Documentation Project

FreeBSD is a registered trademark of The FreeBSD Foundation.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the US and other countries.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, SunOS, Solaris, Java, JDK, and OpenJDK are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Apple and QuickTime are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Macromedia and Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

PartitionMagic is a registered trademark of PowerQuest Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the FreeBSD Project was aware of the trademark claim, the designations have been followed by the TM symbol.

Redistribution and use in source (XML DocBook) and 'compiled' forms (XML, HTML, PDF, PostScript, RTF and so forth) with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code (XML DocBook) must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in compiled form (transformed to other DTDs, converted to PDF, PostScript, RTF and other formats) must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

Important: THIS DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED BY THE FREEBSD DOCUMENTATION PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FREEBSD DOCUMENTATION PROJECT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Table of Contents

1 Introduction	1
2 Making a New Port Yourself	2
3 Quick Porting	3
3.1 Writing the Makefile	3
3.2 Writing the Description Files	3
3.2.1 pkg-descr	3
3.2.2 pkg-plist	4
3.3 Creating the Checksum File	5
3.4 Testing the Port	5
3.5 Checking Your Port with portlint	6
3.6 Submitting the New Port	6
4 Slow Porting	8
4.1 How Things Work	8
4.2 Getting the Original Sources	9
4.3 Modifying the Port	9
4.4 Patching	10
4.5 Configuring	11
4.6 Handling User Input	11
5 Configuring the Makefile	12
5.1 The Original Source	12
5.2 Naming	12
5.2.1 PORTNAME and PORTVERSION	12
5.2.2 PORTREVISION and PORTEPOCH	12
5.2.3 PKGNAMEPREFIX and PKGNAMESUFFIX	15
5.2.4 LATEST_LINK	15
5.2.5 Package Naming Conventions	15
5.3 Categorization	17
5.3.1 CATEGORIES	17
5.3.2 Current List of Categories	17
5.3.3 Choosing the Right Category	21
5.3.4 Proposing a New Category	22
5.3.5 Proposing Reorganizing All the Categories	23
5.4 The Distribution Files	23
5.4.1 DISTVERSION/DISTNAME	23
5.4.2 MASTER_SITES	24
5.4.3 EXTRACT_SUFX	25
5.4.4 DISTFILES	25
5.4.5 EXTRACT_ONLY	25
5.4.6 PATCHFILES	26
5.4.7 Multiple Distribution Files or Patches from Different Sites and Subdirectories (MASTER_SITES:n)	26
5.4.8 DIST_SUBDIR	31
5.4.9 ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES	32
5.5 MAINTAINER	32

5.6 COMMENT	33
5.7 PORTSCOUT	33
5.8 Dependencies	33
5.8.1 LIB_DEPENDS.....	34
5.8.2 RUN_DEPENDS.....	34
5.8.3 BUILD_DEPENDS	35
5.8.4 FETCH_DEPENDS	35
5.8.5 EXTRACT_DEPENDS	36
5.8.6 PATCH_DEPENDS	36
5.8.7 USES.....	36
5.8.8 USE_*.....	36
5.8.9 Minimal Version of a Dependency	37
5.8.10 Notes on Dependencies.....	37
5.8.11 Circular Dependencies Are Fatal.....	38
5.8.12 Problems Caused by Automatic Dependencies	38
5.8.13 USE_ and WANT_	39
5.9 MASTERDIR	39
5.10 Man Pages	40
5.11 Info Files	41
5.12 Makefile Options	41
5.12.1 Knobs.....	42
5.12.2 OPTIONS	43
5.12.3 Feature Auto-Activation	46
5.13 Specifying the Working Directory	46
5.13.1 WRKSRC	47
5.13.2 NO_WRKSUBDIR	47
5.14 Conflict Handling	47
5.14.1 CONFLICTS_INSTALL.....	47
5.14.2 CONFLICTS_BUILD	48
5.14.3 CONFLICTS.....	48
5.15 Installing Files	48
5.15.1 INSTALL_* Macros	48
5.15.2 Stripping Binaries and Shared Libraries.....	48
5.15.3 Installing a Whole Tree of Files	49
5.15.4 Install Additional Documentation.....	49
5.15.5 Subdirectories Under PREFIX	51
6 Special Considerations	52
6.1 Shared Libraries	52
6.2 Ports with Distribution Restrictions	52
6.2.1 NO_PACKAGE.....	52
6.2.2 NO_CDROM.....	53
6.2.3 NOFETCHFILES	53
6.2.4 RESTRICTED.....	53
6.2.5 RESTRICTED_FILES.....	53
6.2.6 Examples.....	54
6.3 Building Mechanisms.....	54
6.3.1 Building Ports in Parallel.....	54

6.3.2	make, gmake, and imake	54
6.3.3	configure Script	54
6.3.4	Using cmake	55
6.3.5	Using scons	56
6.4	Using GNU Autotools	56
6.4.1	Introduction	56
6.4.2	libtool	57
6.4.3	libltdl	57
6.4.4	autoconf and autoheader	57
6.4.5	automake and aclocal	58
6.5	Using pkg-config	58
6.6	Using GNU gettext	58
6.6.1	Basic Usage	59
6.6.2	Optional Usage	59
6.6.3	Handling Message Catalog Directories	60
6.7	Using Perl	60
6.8	Using X11	61
6.8.1	X.Org Components	61
6.8.2	Ports That Require Motif	62
6.8.3	X11 Fonts	63
6.8.4	Getting a Fake DISPLAY with Xvfb	63
6.8.5	Desktop Entries	63
6.9	Using GNOME	64
6.10	Using Qt	64
6.10.1	Ports That Require Qt	64
6.10.2	Component Selection (Qt 4.x Only)	65
6.10.3	Additional Considerations	67
6.11	Using KDE	67
6.11.1	Variable Definitions (KDE 3.x Only)	67
6.11.2	KDE 4 Variable Definitions	68
6.12	Using Java	69
6.12.1	Variable Definitions	69
6.12.2	Building with Ant	71
6.12.3	Best Practices	71
6.13	Web Applications, Apache and PHP	72
6.13.1	Apache	72
6.13.2	Web Applications	73
6.13.3	PHP	73
6.13.4	PEAR Modules	74
6.14	Using Python	74
6.15	Using Tcl/Tk	75
6.16	Using Emacs	76
6.17	Using Ruby	76
6.18	Using SDL	77
6.19	Using wxWidgets	78
6.19.1	Introduction	78
6.19.2	Version Selection	78
6.19.3	Component Selection	79

6.19.4 Unicode.....	80
6.19.5 Detecting Installed Versions	81
6.19.6 Defined Variables.....	81
6.19.7 Processing in <code>bsd.port.pre.mk</code>	82
6.19.8 Additional <code>configure</code> Arguments	82
6.20 Using Lua	83
6.20.1 Introduction.....	83
6.20.2 Version Selection	83
6.20.3 Component Selection.....	84
6.20.4 Detecting Installed Versions	85
6.20.5 Defined Variables.....	86
6.20.6 Processing in <code>bsd.port.pre.mk</code>	86
6.21 Using Xfce.....	87
6.22 Using Mozilla.....	88
6.23 Using Databases	88
6.24 Starting and Stopping Services (<code>rc</code> Scripts)	89
6.24.1 Stopping Services at Deinstall	91
6.24.2 Pre-Commit Checklist	91
6.25 Adding Users and Groups	92
6.26 Ports That Rely on Kernel Sources	92
7 Advanced <code>pkg-plist</code> Practices	93
7.1 Changing <code>pkg-plist</code> Based on Make Variables	93
7.2 Empty Directories	93
7.2.1 Cleaning Up Empty Directories.....	94
7.2.2 Creating Empty Directories	94
7.3 Configuration Files.....	94
7.4 Dynamic Versus Static Package List.....	95
7.5 Automated Package List Creation.....	95
8 The <code>pkg-*</code> Files	97
8.1 <code>pkg-message</code>	97
8.2 <code>pkg-install</code>	97
8.3 <code>pkg-deinstall</code>	97
8.4 <code>pkg-req</code>	98
8.5 Changing the Names of <code>pkg-*</code> Files.....	98
8.6 Making Use of <code>SUB_FILES</code> and <code>SUB_LIST</code>	98
9 Testing Your Port	100
9.1 Running <code>make describe</code>	100
9.2 <code>Portlint</code>	100
9.3 Port Tools	100
9.4 <code>PREFIX</code> and <code>DESTDIR</code>	100
9.5 Tinderbox	101
10 Upgrading an Individual Port.....	102
10.1 Using <code>SVN</code> to Make Patches.....	103
10.2 The Files <code>UPDATING</code> and <code>MOVED</code>	104

11 Ports Security	105
11.1 Why Security is So Important	105
11.2 Fixing Security Vulnerabilities.....	105
11.3 Keeping the Community Informed.....	105
11.3.1 The VuXML Database	106
11.3.2 A Short Introduction to VuXML	106
11.3.3 Testing Your Changes to the VuXML Database	108
12 Dos and Don'ts	111
12.1 Introduction	111
12.2 WRKDIR.....	111
12.3 WRKDIRPREFIX	111
12.4 Differentiating Operating Systems and OS Versions	111
12.5 __FreeBSD_version Values.....	112
12.6 Writing Something After <code>bsd.port.mk</code>	150
12.7 Use the <code>exec</code> Statement in Wrapper Scripts	151
12.8 Do Things Rationally	151
12.9 Respect Both <code>CC</code> and <code>CXX</code>	152
12.10 Respect <code>CFLAGS</code>	152
12.11 Threading Libraries	153
12.12 Feedback.....	153
12.13 <code>README.html</code>	153
12.14 Marking a Port Not Installable with <code>BROKEN</code> , <code>FORBIDDEN</code> , or <code>IGNORE</code>	153
12.14.1 Variables	153
12.14.2 Implementation Notes.....	155
12.15 Marking a Port for Removal with <code>DEPRECATED</code> or <code>EXPIRATION_DATE</code>	155
12.16 Avoid Use of the <code>.error</code> Construct	155
12.17 Usage of <code>sysctl</code>	156
12.18 Rerolling Distfiles	156
12.19 Avoiding Linuxisms	156
12.20 Miscellanea.....	157
13 A Sample Makefile.....	158
14 Keeping Up	160
14.1 FreshPorts.....	160
14.2 The Web Interface to the Source Repository.....	160
14.3 The FreeBSD Ports Mailing List.....	160
14.4 The FreeBSD Port Building Cluster on <code>pointyhat.FreeBSD.org</code>	160
14.5 Portscout: the FreeBSD Ports Distfile Scanner	161
14.6 The FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System.....	161
15 Appendices.....	162
15.1 Values of <code>USES</code>	162

List of Tables

5-1. Popular Magic <code>MASTER_SITES</code> Macros.....	24
5-2. The <code>USE_*</code> Variables	37
5-3. Common <code>WITH_*</code> and <code>WITHOUT_*</code> Variables.....	42
6-1. Variables for Ports Related to gmake	54
6-2. Variables for Ports That Use <code>configure</code>	55
6-3. Variables for Ports That Use <code>cmake</code>	55
6-4. Variables for Ports That Use <code>scons</code>	56
6-5. Values for <code>USE_PKGCONFIG</code>	58
6-6. Variables for Ports That Use Perl	60
6-7. Variables for Ports That Use X	62
6-8. Variables for Depending on Individual Parts of X11	62
6-9. Variables for Ports That Use Qt	64
6-10. Additional Variables for Ports That Use Qt 4.x	65
6-11. Available Qt 4 Library Components.....	66
6-12. Available Qt 4 Tool Components.....	66
6-13. Available Qt 4 Plugin Components	66
6-14. Variables for Ports That Use KDE 3.x	67
6-15. Available KDE 4 Components.....	68
6-16. Variables Which May be Set by Ports That Use Java	69
6-17. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Java	70
6-18. Constants Defined for Ports That Use Java	71
6-19. Variables for Ports That Use Apache	72
6-20. Useful Variables for Porting Apache Modules	72
6-21. Variables for Ports That Use PHP	73
6-22. Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Python	75
6-23. The Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Tcl/Tk	76
6-24. Useful Variables for Ports That Use Ruby	76
6-25. Selected Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Ruby	77
6-26. Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions.....	78
6-27. Available wxWidgets Versions	78
6-28. wxWidgets Version Specifications.....	79
6-29. Variables to Select Preferred wxWidgets Versions	79
6-30. Available wxWidgets Components	79
6-31. Available wxWidgets Dependency Types.....	80
6-32. Default wxWidgets Dependency Types	80
6-33. Variables to Select Unicode in wxWidgets Versions	80
6-34. Variables Defined for Ports That Use wxWidgets	81
6-35. Legal Values for <code>WX_CONF_ARGS</code>	83
6-36. Variables to Select Lua Versions.....	83
6-37. Available Lua Versions	83
6-38. Lua Version Specifications.....	84
6-39. Variables to Select Preferred Lua Versions.....	84
6-40. Available Lua Components.....	84
6-41. Available Lua Dependency Types.....	84
6-42. Default Lua Dependency Types	85
6-43. Variables Defined for Ports That Use Lua	86

6-44. Variables for Ports That Use Mozilla	88
6-45. Variables for Ports Using Databases.....	89
10-1. <code>SVN</code> Update File Prefixes	103
12-1. <code>__FreeBSD_version</code> Values.....	113
15-1. Values of <code>USES</code>	162

Chapter 1 Introduction

The FreeBSD ports collection is the way almost everyone installs applications ("ports") on FreeBSD. Like everything else about FreeBSD, it is primarily a volunteer effort. It is important to keep this in mind when reading this document.

In FreeBSD, anyone may submit a new port, or volunteer to maintain an existing port if it is unmaintained—you do not need any special commit privileges to do so.

Chapter 2 Making a New Port Yourself

So, you are interested in making your own port or upgrading an existing one? Great!

What follows are some guidelines for creating a new port for FreeBSD. If you want to upgrade an existing port, you should read this and then read Chapter 10.

When this document is not sufficiently detailed, you should refer to `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.port.mk`, which all port Makefiles include. Even if you do not hack Makefiles daily, it is well commented, and you will still gain much knowledge from it. Additionally, you may send specific questions to the FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>).

Note: Only a fraction of the variables (`VAR`) that can be overridden are mentioned in this document. Most (if not all) are documented at the start of `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.port.mk`; the others probably ought to be. Note that this file uses a non-standard tab setting: **Emacs** and **Vim** should recognize the setting on loading the file. Both `vi(1)` and `ex(1)` can be set to use the correct value by typing `:set tabstop=4` once the file has been loaded.

Looking for something easy to start with? Take a look at the list of requested ports (<http://wiki.freebsd.org/WantedPorts>) and see if you can work on one (or more).

Chapter 3 Quick Porting

This section tells you how to quickly create a new port. In many cases, it is not sufficient, so you will have to read further on into the document.

First, get the original tarball and put it into `DISTDIR`, which defaults to `/usr/ports/distfiles`.

Note: The following assumes that the software compiled out-of-the-box, i.e., there was absolutely no change required for the port to work on your FreeBSD box. If you needed to change something, you will have to refer to the next section too.

3.1 Writing the `Makefile`

The minimal `Makefile` would look something like this:

```
# $FreeBSD$

PORTNAME=      oneko
PORTVERSION=   1.1b
CATEGORIES=    games
MASTER_SITES=  ftp://ftp.cs.columbia.edu/archives/X11R5/contrib/

MAINTAINER=    asami@FreeBSD.org
COMMENT=       Cat chasing a mouse all over the screen

MAN1=          oneko.1
MANCOMPRESSED= yes
USE_IMAKE=     yes

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

Note: In some cases, the `Makefile` of an existing port may contain additional lines in the header, such as the name of the port and the date it was created. This additional information has been declared obsolete, and is being phased out.

See if you can figure it out. Do not worry about the contents of the `$FreeBSD$` line, it will be filled in automatically by SVN when the port is imported to our main ports tree. You can find a more detailed example in the sample `Makefile` section.

3.2 Writing the Description Files

There are two description files that are required for any port, whether they actually package or not. They are `pkg-descr` and `pkg-plist`. Their `pkg-` prefix distinguishes them from other files.

3.2.1 pkg-descr

This is a longer description of the port. One to a few paragraphs concisely explaining what the port does is sufficient.

Note: This is *not* a manual or an in-depth description on how to use or compile the port! *Please be careful if you are copying from the `README` or manpage*; too often they are not a concise description of the port or are in an awkward format (e.g., manpages have justified spacing, as it looks particularly bad with monospaced fonts).

A well-written `pkg-descr` describes the port completely enough that users would not have to consult the documentation or visit the website to understand what the software does, how it can be useful, or what particularly nice features it has. Mentioning certain requirements like a graphical toolkit, heavy dependencies, runtime environment, or implementation languages help users decide whether this port will work for them.

Include a URL to the official WWW homepage. Prepend *one* of the websites (pick the most common one) with `WWW:` (followed by single space) so that automated tools will work correctly. If the URI is the root of the website or directory, it should be terminated with a slash.

Note: If the listed webpage for a port is not available, try to search the Internet first to see if the official site moved, was renamed, or is hosted elsewhere.

The following example shows how your `pkg-descr` should look:

```
This is a port of oneko, in which a cat chases a poor mouse all over
the screen.
:
(etc.)

WWW: http://www.oneko.org/
```

3.2.2 pkg-plist

This file lists all the files installed by the port. It is also called the “packing list” because the package is generated by packing the files listed here. The pathnames are relative to the installation prefix (usually `/usr/local`). If you are using the `MANn` variables (as you should be), do not list any manpages here. If the port creates directories during installation, make sure to add `@dirrm` lines to remove them when the package is deleted.

Here is a small example:

```
bin/oneko
lib/X11/app-defaults/Oneko
lib/X11/oneko/cat1.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/cat2.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/mouse.xpm
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko
```

Refer to the `pkg_create(1)` manual page for details on the packing list.

Note: It is recommended that you keep all the filenames in this file sorted alphabetically. It will make verifying the changes when you upgrade the port much easier.

Note: Creating a packing list manually can be a very tedious task. If the port installs a large numbers of files, creating the packing list automatically might save time.

There is only one case when `pkg-plist` can be omitted from a port. If the port installs just a handful of files, and perhaps directories, the files and directories may be listed in the variables `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS`, respectively, within the port's `Makefile`. For instance, we could get along without `pkg-plist` in the above `oneko` port by adding the following lines to the `Makefile`:

```
PLIST_FILES=    bin/oneko \
                lib/X11/app-defaults/Oneko \
                lib/X11/oneko/cat1.xpm \
                lib/X11/oneko/cat2.xpm \
                lib/X11/oneko/mouse.xpm
PLIST_DIRS=    lib/X11/oneko
```

Of course, `PLIST_DIRS` should be left unset if a port installs no directories of its own.

The price for this way of listing port's files and directories is that you cannot use command sequences described in `pkg_create(1)`. Therefore, it is suitable only for simple ports and makes them even simpler. At the same time, it has the advantage of reducing the number of files in the ports collection. Please consider using this technique before you resort to `pkg-plist`.

Later we will see how `pkg-plist` and `PLIST_FILES` can be used to fulfill more sophisticated tasks.

3.3 Creating the Checksum File

Just type `make makesum`. The ports make rules will automatically generate the file `distinfo`.

If a file fetched has its checksum changed regularly and you are certain the source is trusted (i.e., it comes from manufacturer CDs or documentation generated daily), you should specify these files in the `IGNOREFILES` variable. Then the checksum is not calculated for that file when you run `make makesum`, but set to `IGNORE`.

3.4 Testing the Port

You should make sure that the port rules do exactly what you want them to do, including packaging up the port. These are the important points you need to verify.

- `pkg-plist` does not contain anything not installed by your port
- `pkg-plist` contains everything that is installed by your port
- Your port can be installed multiple times using the `reinstall` target
- Your port cleans up after itself upon `deinstall`

Recommended Test Ordering

1. `make install`
2. `make package`
3. `make deinstall`
4. `pkg_add package-name`
5. `make deinstall`
6. `make reinstall`
7. `make package`
8. `make readme`

Make sure that there are not any warnings issued in any of the `package` and `deinstall` stages. After step 3, check to see if all the new directories are correctly deleted. Also, try using the software after step 4, to ensure that it works correctly when installed from a package.

The most thorough way to automate these steps is via installing the **ports tinderbox**. This maintains `jails` in which you can test all of the above steps without changing the state of your running system. Please see `ports/ports-mgmt/tinderbox` for more information.

3.5 Checking Your Port with `portlint`

Please use `portlint` to see if your port conforms to our guidelines. The `ports-mgmt/portlint` program is part of the ports collection. In particular, you may want to check if the Makefile is in the right shape and the package is named appropriately.

3.6 Submitting the New Port

Before you submit the new port, make sure you have read the DOs and DON'Ts section.

Now that you are happy with your port, the only thing remaining is to put it in the main FreeBSD ports tree and make everybody else happy about it too. We do not need your `work` directory or the `pkgname.tgz` package, so delete them now. Next, assuming your port is called `oneko`, `cd` to the directory above where the `oneko` directory is located, and then type the following: `shar `find oneko` > oneko.shar`

Include your `oneko.shar` file in a bug report and send it with the `send-pr(1)` program (see Bug Reports and General Commentary

(http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/contributing/contrib-how.html#CONTRIB-GENERAL)

for more information about `send-pr(1)`). Be sure to classify the bug report as category `ports` and class `change-request` (Do not mark the report `confidential`!). Also add a short description of the program you ported to the “Description” field of the PR (e.g., perhaps a short version of the `COMMENT`), and add the `shar` file to the “Fix” field.

Note: You can make our work a lot easier, if you use a good description in the synopsis of the problem report. We prefer something like “New port: <category>/<portname> <short description of the port>” for new ports. If you stick to this scheme, the chance that someone will take a look at your PR soon is much better.

One more time, *do not include the original source distfile, the `work` directory, or the package you built with `make package`*; and, do use `shar(1)` for new ports, not `diff(1)`.

After you have submitted your port, please be patient. Sometimes it can take a few months before a port is included in FreeBSD, although it might only take a few days. You can view the list of ports PRs waiting to be committed to FreeBSD (<http://www.FreeBSD.org/cgi/query-pr-summary.cgi?category=ports>).

Once we have looked at your port, we will get back to you if necessary, and put it in the tree. Your name will also be added to the list of Additional FreeBSD Contributors (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/contributors/contrib-additional.html) and other files.

Chapter 4 Slow Porting

Ok, so it was not that simple, and the port required some modifications to get it to work. In this section, we will explain, step by step, how to modify it to get it to work with the ports paradigm.

4.1 How Things Work

First, this is the sequence of events which occurs when the user first types `make` in your port's directory. You may find that having `bsd.port.mk` in another window while you read this really helps to understand it.

But do not worry if you do not really understand what `bsd.port.mk` is doing, not many people do... :-)

1. The `fetch` target is run. The `fetch` target is responsible for making sure that the tarball exists locally in `DISTDIR`. If `fetch` cannot find the required files in `DISTDIR` it will look up the URL `MASTER_SITES`, which is set in the Makefile, as well as our main FTP site at `ftp://ftp.FreeBSD.org/pub/FreeBSD/ports/distfiles/`, where we put sanctioned distfiles as backup. It will then attempt to fetch the named distribution file with `FETCH`, assuming that the requesting site has direct access to the Internet. If that succeeds, it will save the file in `DISTDIR` for future use and proceed.
2. The `extract` target is run. It looks for your port's distribution file (typically a gzipped tarball) in `DISTDIR` and unpacks it into a temporary subdirectory specified by `WRKDIR` (defaults to `work`).
3. The `patch` target is run. First, any patches defined in `PATCHFILES` are applied. Second, if any patch files named `patch-*` are found in `PATCHDIR` (defaults to the `files` subdirectory), they are applied at this time in alphabetical order.
4. The `configure` target is run. This can do any one of many different things.
 1. If it exists, `scripts/configure` is run.
 2. If `HAS_CONFIGURE` or `GNU_CONFIGURE` is set, `WRKSRC/configure` is run.
 3. If `USE_IMAKE` is set, `XMKMF` (default: `xmkmf -a`) is run.
5. The `build` target is run. This is responsible for descending into the port's private working directory (`WRKSRC`) and building it. If `USE_GMAKE` is set, GNU `make` will be used, otherwise the system `make` will be used.

The above are the default actions. In addition, you can define targets `pre-something` or `post-something`, or put scripts with those names, in the `scripts` subdirectory, and they will be run before or after the default actions are done.

For example, if you have a `post-extract` target defined in your Makefile, and a file `pre-build` in the `scripts` subdirectory, the `post-extract` target will be called after the regular extraction actions, and the `pre-build` script will be executed before the default build rules are done. It is recommended that you use Makefile targets if the actions are simple enough, because it will be easier for someone to figure out what kind of non-default action the port requires.

The default actions are done by the `bsd.port.mk` targets `do-something`. For example, the commands to extract a port are in the target `do-extract`. If you are not happy with the default target, you can fix it by redefining the `do-something` target in your Makefile.

Note: The “main” targets (e.g., `extract`, `configure`, etc.) do nothing more than make sure all the stages up to that one are completed and call the real targets or scripts, and they are not intended to be changed. If you want

to fix the extraction, fix `do-extract`, but never ever change the way `extract` operates! Additionally, the target `post-deinstall` is invalid and is not run by the ports infrastructure.

Now that you understand what goes on when the user types `make`, let us go through the recommended steps to create the perfect port.

4.2 Getting the Original Sources

Get the original sources (normally) as a compressed tarball (`foo.tar.gz` or `foo.tar.bz2`) and copy it into `DISTDIR`. Always use *mainstream* sources when and where you can.

You will need to set the variable `MASTER_SITES` to reflect where the original tarball resides. You will find convenient shorthand definitions for most mainstream sites in `bsd.sites.mk`. Please use these sites—and the associated definitions—if at all possible, to help avoid the problem of having the same information repeated over again many times in the source base. As these sites tend to change over time, this becomes a maintenance nightmare for everyone involved.

If you cannot find a FTP/HTTP site that is well-connected to the net, or can only find sites that have irritatingly non-standard formats, you might want to put a copy on a reliable FTP or HTTP server that you control (e.g., your home page).

If you cannot find somewhere convenient and reliable to put the distfile we can “house” it ourselves on `ftp.FreeBSD.org`; however, this is the least-preferred solution. The distfile must be placed into `~/public_distfiles/` of someone’s `freefall` account. Ask the person who commits your port to do this. This person will also set `MASTER_SITES` to `MASTER_SITE_LOCAL` and `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` to their `freefall` username.

If your port’s distfile changes all the time without any kind of version update by the author, consider putting the distfile on your home page and listing it as the first `MASTER_SITES`. If you can, try to talk the port author out of doing this; it really does help to establish some kind of source code control. Hosting your own version will prevent users from getting `checksum mismatch` errors, and also reduce the workload of maintainers of our FTP site. Also, if there is only one master site for the port, it is recommended that you house a backup at your site and list it as the second `MASTER_SITES`.

If your port requires some additional ‘patches’ that are available on the Internet, fetch them too and put them in `DISTDIR`. Do not worry if they come from a site other than where you got the main source tarball, we have a way to handle these situations (see the description of `PATCHFILES` below).

4.3 Modifying the Port

Unpack a copy of the tarball in a private directory and make whatever changes are necessary to get the port to compile properly under the current version of FreeBSD. Keep *careful track* of everything you do, as you will be automating the process shortly. Everything, including the deletion, addition, or modification of files should be doable using an automated script or patch file when your port is finished.

If your port requires significant user interaction/customization to compile or install, you should take a look at one of Larry Wall’s classic **Configure** scripts and perhaps do something similar yourself. The goal of the new ports collection is to make each port as “plug-and-play” as possible for the end-user while using a minimum of disk space.

Note: Unless explicitly stated, patch files, scripts, and other files you have created and contributed to the FreeBSD ports collection are assumed to be covered by the standard BSD copyright conditions.

4.4 Patching

In the preparation of the port, files that have been added or changed can be picked up with a `diff(1)` for later feeding to `patch(1)`. Each patch you wish to apply should be saved into a file named `patch-*` where `*` indicates the pathname of the file that is patched, such as `patch-Imakefile` or `patch-src-config.h`. These files should be stored in `PATCHDIR` (usually `files/`, from where they will be automatically applied. All patches must be relative to `WRKSRC` (generally the directory your port's tarball unpacks itself into, that being where the build is done). To make fixes and upgrades easier, you should avoid having more than one patch fix the same file (e.g., `patch-file` and `patch-file2` both changing `WRKSRC/foobar.c`). Note that if the path of a patched file contains an underscore (`_`) character, the patch needs to have two underscores instead in its name. For example, to patch a file named `src/freetype__joystick.c`, the corresponding patch should be named `patch-src-freetype__joystick.c`.

Please only use characters `[-+._a-zA-Z0-9]` for naming your patches. Do not use any other characters besides them. Do not name your patches like `patch-aa` or `patch-ab` etc, always mention the path and file name in patch names.

Do not put RCS strings in patches. SVN will mangle them when we put the files into the ports tree, and when we check them out again, they will come out different and the patch will fail. RCS strings are surrounded by dollar (`$`) signs, and typically start with `$Id` or `$RCS`.

Using the `recurse (-r)` option to `diff(1)` to generate patches is fine, but please take a look at the resulting patches to make sure you do not have any unnecessary junk in there. In particular, diffs between two backup files, `Makefiles` when the port uses `Imake` or `GNU configure`, etc., are unnecessary and should be deleted. If you had to edit `configure.in` and run `autoconf` to regenerate `configure`, do not take the diffs of `configure` (it often grows to a few thousand lines!); define `USE_AUTOTOOLS=autoconf:261` and take the diffs of `configure.in`.

Also, try to minimize the amount of non-functional whitespace changes in your patches. It is common in the Open Source world for projects to share large amounts of a code base, but obey different style and indenting rules. If you take a working piece of functionality from one project to fix similar areas in another, please be careful: the resulting line patch may be full of non-functional changes. It not only increases the size of the SVN repository but makes it hard to find out what exactly caused the problem and what you changed at all.

If you had to delete a file, then you can do it in the `post-extract` target rather than as part of the patch.

Simple replacements can be performed directly from the port `Makefile` using the in-place mode of `sed(1)`. This is very useful when you need to patch in a variable value. Example:

```
post-patch:
    @${REINPLACE_CMD} -e 's|for Linux|for FreeBSD|g' ${WRKSRC}/README
```

Quite often, there is a situation when the software being ported, especially if it is primarily developed on Windows®, uses the CR/LF convention for most of its source files. This may cause problems with further patching, compiler warnings, scripts execution (`/bin/sh^M` not found), etc. To quickly convert all files from CR/LF to just LF, add `USE_DOS2UNIX=yes` to the port `Makefile`. A list of files to convert can be specified:

```
USE_DOS2UNIX=    util.c util.h
```

If you want to convert a group of files across subdirectories, `DOS2UNIX_REGEX` can be used. Its argument is a `find` compatible regular expression. More on the format is in `re_format(7)`. This option is useful for converting all files of a given extension, for example all source code files leaving binary files intact:

```
USE_DOS2UNIX=    yes
DOS2UNIX_REGEX=  .*\. (c|cpp|h)
```

If you want to create a patch file based off of an existing file, you can copy it with an `.orig` extension, and then modify the original one. The `makepatch` target will write out an appropriate patch file to the `files` directory of the port.

4.5 Configuring

Include any additional customization commands in your `configure` script and save it in the `scripts` subdirectory. As mentioned above, you can also do this with `Makefile` targets and/or scripts with the name `pre-configure` or `post-configure`.

4.6 Handling User Input

If your port requires user input to build, configure, or install, you must set `IS_INTERACTIVE` in your `Makefile`. This will allow “overnight builds” to skip your port if the user sets the variable `BATCH` in his environment (and if the user sets the variable `INTERACTIVE`, then *only* those ports requiring interaction are built). This will save a lot of wasted time on the set of machines that continually build ports (see below).

It is also recommended that if there are reasonable default answers to the questions, you check the `PACKAGE_BUILDING` variable and turn off the interactive script when it is set. This will allow us to build the packages for CDROMs and FTP.

Chapter 5 Configuring the Makefile

Configuring the `Makefile` is pretty simple, and again we suggest that you look at existing examples before starting. Also, there is a sample `Makefile` in this handbook, so take a look and please follow the ordering of variables and sections in that template to make your port easier for others to read.

Now, consider the following problems in sequence as you design your new `Makefile`:

5.1 The Original Source

Does it live in `DISTDIR` as a standard gzipped tarball named something like `foozolix-1.2.tar.gz`? If so, you can go on to the next step. If not, you should look at overriding any of the `DISTVERSION`, `DISTNAME`, `EXTRACT_CMD`, `EXTRACT_BEFORE_ARGS`, `EXTRACT_AFTER_ARGS`, `EXTRACT_SUFX`, or `DISTFILES` variables, depending on how alien a format your port's distribution file is.

In the worst case, you can simply create your own `do-extract` target to override the default, though this should be rarely, if ever, necessary.

5.2 Naming

The first part of the port's `Makefile` names the port, describes its version number, and lists it in the correct category.

5.2.1 `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION`

You should set `PORTNAME` to the base name of your port, and `PORTVERSION` to the version number of the port.

5.2.2 `PORTREVISION` and `PORTEPOCH`

5.2.2.1 `PORTREVISION`

The `PORTREVISION` variable is a monotonically increasing value which is reset to 0 with every increase of `PORTVERSION` (i.e., every time a new official vendor release is made), and appended to the package name if non-zero. Changes to `PORTREVISION` are used by automated tools (e.g., `pkg_version(1)`) to highlight the fact that a new package is available.

`PORTREVISION` should be increased each time a change is made to the port which significantly affects the content or structure of the derived package.

Examples of when `PORTREVISION` should be bumped:

- Addition of patches to correct security vulnerabilities, bugs, or to add new functionality to the port.
- Changes to the port `Makefile` to enable or disable compile-time options in the package.
- Changes in the packing list or the install-time behavior of the package (e.g., change to a script which generates initial data for the package, like `ssh` host keys).
- Version bump of a port's shared library dependency (in this case, someone trying to install the old package after installing a newer version of the dependency will fail since it will look for the old `libfoo.x` instead of `libfoo.(x+1)`).

- Silent changes to the port distfile which have significant functional differences, i.e., changes to the distfile requiring a correction to `distinfo` with no corresponding change to `PORTVERSION`, where a `diff -ru` of the old and new versions shows non-trivial changes to the code.

Examples of changes which do not require a `PORTREVISION` bump:

- Style changes to the port skeleton with no functional change to what appears in the resulting package.
- Changes to `MASTER_SITES` or other functional changes to the port which do not affect the resulting package.
- Trivial patches to the distfile such as correction of typos, which are not important enough that users of the package should go to the trouble of upgrading.
- Build fixes which cause a package to become compilable where it was previously failing (as long as the changes do not introduce any functional change on any other platforms on which the port did previously build). Since `PORTREVISION` reflects the content of the package, if the package was not previously buildable then there is no need to increase `PORTREVISION` to mark a change.

A rule of thumb is to ask yourself whether a change committed to a port is something which everyone would benefit from having (either because of an enhancement, fix, or by virtue that the new package will actually work at all), and weigh that against that fact that it will cause everyone who regularly updates their ports tree to be compelled to update. If yes, the `PORTREVISION` should be bumped.

5.2.2.2 PORTEPOCH

From time to time a software vendor or FreeBSD porter will do something silly and release a version of their software which is actually numerically less than the previous version. An example of this is a port which goes from `foo-20000801` to `foo-1.0` (the former will be incorrectly treated as a newer version since 20000801 is a numerically greater value than 1).

Tip: The results of version number comparisons are not always obvious. `pkg_version(1)` can be used to test the comparison of two version number strings. The **pkgng** equivalent is `pkg version -t`. For example:

```
% pkg_version -t 0.031 0.29
>
```

Or, for **pkgng** users:

```
% pkg version -t 0.031 0.29
>
```

The `>` output indicates that version 0.031 is considered greater than version 0.29, which may not have been obvious to the porter.

In situations such as this, the `PORTEPOCH` version should be increased. If `PORTEPOCH` is nonzero it is appended to the package name as described in section 0 above. `PORTEPOCH` must never be decreased or reset to zero, because that would cause comparison to a package from an earlier epoch to fail (i.e., the package would not be detected as out of date): the new version number (e.g., `1.0, 1` in the above example) is still numerically less than the previous version (20000801), but the `, 1` suffix is treated specially by automated tools and found to be greater than the implied suffix `, 0` on the earlier package.

Dropping or resetting `ORTEPOCH` incorrectly leads to no end of grief; if you do not understand the above discussion, please keep after it until you do, or ask questions on the mailing lists.

It is expected that `ORTEPOCH` will not be used for the majority of ports, and that sensible use of `PORTVERSION` can often preempt it becoming necessary if a future release of the software should change the version structure. However, care is needed by FreeBSD porters when a vendor release is made without an official version number — such as a code “snapshot” release. The temptation is to label the release with the release date, which will cause problems as in the example above when a new “official” release is made.

For example, if a snapshot release is made on the date 20000917, and the previous version of the software was version 1.2, the snapshot release should be given a `PORTVERSION` of 1.2.20000917 or similar, not 20000917, so that the succeeding release, say 1.3, is still a numerically greater value.

5.2.2.3 Example of `PORTREVISION` and `ORTEPOCH` Usage

The `gtkmmumble` port, version 0.10, is committed to the ports collection:

```
PORTNAME=      gtkmmumble
PORTVERSION=    0.10
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmmumble-0.10`.

A security hole is discovered which requires a local FreeBSD patch. `PORTREVISION` is bumped accordingly.

```
PORTNAME=      gtkmmumble
PORTVERSION=    0.10
PORTREVISION=    1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmmumble-0.10_1`

A new version is released by the vendor, numbered 0.2 (it turns out the author actually intended 0.10 to actually mean 0.1.0, not “what comes after 0.9” - oops, too late now). Since the new minor version 2 is numerically less than the previous version 10, the `ORTEPOCH` must be bumped to manually force the new package to be detected as “newer”. Since it is a new vendor release of the code, `PORTREVISION` is reset to 0 (or removed from the `Makefile`).

```
PORTNAME=      gtkmmumble
PORTVERSION=    0.2
ORTEPOCH=      1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmmumble-0.2,1`

The next release is 0.3. Since `ORTEPOCH` never decreases, the version variables are now:

```
PORTNAME=      gtkmmumble
PORTVERSION=    0.3
ORTEPOCH=      1
```

`PKGNAME` becomes `gtkmmumble-0.3,1`

Note: If `ORTEPOCH` were reset to 0 with this upgrade, someone who had installed the `gtkmmumble-0.10_1` package would not detect the `gtkmmumble-0.3` package as newer, since 3 is still numerically less than 10. Remember, this is the whole point of `ORTEPOCH` in the first place.

5.2.3 PKGNAMEPREFIX and PKGNAMESUFFIX

Two optional variables, `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMESUFFIX`, are combined with `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION` to form `PKGNAME` as `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}${PKGNAMESUFFIX}-${PORTVERSION}`. Make sure this conforms to our guidelines for a good package name. In particular, you are *not* allowed to use a hyphen (-) in `PORTVERSION`. Also, if the package name has the *language-* or the *-compiled.specifics* part (see below), use `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMESUFFIX`, respectively. Do not make them part of `PORTNAME`.

5.2.4 LATEST_LINK

`LATEST_LINK` is used during package building to determine a shortened name to create links that can be used by `pkg_add -r`. This makes it possible to, for example, install the latest perl version by running `pkg_add -r perl` without knowing the exact version number. This name needs to be unique and obvious to users.

In some cases, several versions of a program may be present in the ports collection at the same time. Both the index build and the package build system need to be able to see them as different, independent ports, although they may all have the same `PORTNAME`, `PKGNAMEPREFIX`, and even `PKGNAMESUFFIX`. In those cases, the optional `LATEST_LINK` variable should be set to a different value for all ports except the “main” one — see the `lang/gcc46` and `lang/gcc` ports, and the `www/apache*` family for examples of its use. By setting `NO_LATEST_LINK`, no link will be generated, which may be an option for all but the “main” version. Note that how to choose a “main” version — “most popular”, “best supported”, “least patched”, and so on — is outside the scope of this handbook’s recommendations; we only tell you how to specify the other ports’ versions after you have picked a “main” one.

5.2.5 Package Naming Conventions

The following are the conventions you should follow in naming your packages. This is to have our package directory easy to scan, as there are already thousands of packages and users are going to turn away if they hurt their eyes!

The package name should look like `[language[_region]]-name[[-]compiled.specifics]-version.numbers`.

The package name is defined as `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}${PKGNAMESUFFIX}-${PORTVERSION}`. Make sure to set the variables to conform to that format.

1. FreeBSD strives to support the native language of its users. The *language-* part should be a two letter abbreviation of the natural language defined by ISO-639 if the port is specific to a certain language. Examples are `ja` for Japanese, `ru` for Russian, `vi` for Vietnamese, `zh` for Chinese, `ko` for Korean and `de` for German.

If the port is specific to a certain region within the language area, add the two letter country code as well. Examples are `en_US` for US English and `fr_CH` for Swiss French.

The *language-* part should be set in the `PKGNAMEPREFIX` variable.

2. The first letter of the `name` part should be lowercase. (The rest of the name may contain capital letters, so use your own discretion when you are converting a software name that has some capital letters in it.) There is a tradition of naming Perl 5 modules by prepending `p5-` and converting the double-colon separator to a hyphen; for example, the `Data::Dumper` module becomes `p5-Data-Dumper`.
3. Make sure that the port’s name and version are clearly separated and placed into the `PORTNAME` and `PORTVERSION` variables. The only reason for `PORTNAME` to contain a version part is if the upstream distribution is really named that way, as in the `textproc/libxml2` or `japanese/kinput2-freewnn` ports. Otherwise, the `PORTNAME` should not contain any version-specific information. It is quite normal for several ports to have

the same `PORTNAME`, as the `www/apache*` ports do; in that case, different versions (and different index entries) are distinguished by the `PKGNAMEPREFIX`, `PKGNAME_SUFFIX`, and `LATEST_LINK` values.

4. If the port can be built with different hardcoded defaults (usually part of the directory name in a family of ports), the `-compiled.specifcs` part should state the compiled-in defaults (the hyphen is optional). Examples are paper size and font units.

The `-compiled.specifcs` part should be set in the `PKGNAME_SUFFIX` variable.

5. The version string should follow a dash (`-`) and be a period-separated list of integers and single lowercase alphabets. In particular, it is not permissible to have another dash inside the version string. The only exception is the string `p1` (meaning “patchlevel”), which can be used *only* when there are no major and minor version numbers in the software. If the software version has strings like “alpha”, “beta”, “rc”, or “pre”, take the first letter and put it immediately after a period. If the version string continues after those names, the numbers should follow the single alphabet without an extra period between them.

The idea is to make it easier to sort ports by looking at the version string. In particular, make sure version number components are always delimited by a period, and if the date is part of the string, use the `0.0.yyyy.mm.dd` format, not `dd.mm.yyyy` or the non-Y2K compliant `yy.mm.dd` format. It is important to prefix the version with `0.0.` in case a release with an actual version number is made, which would of course be numerically less than `yyyy`.

Here are some (real) examples on how to convert the name as called by the software authors to a suitable package name:

Distribution Name	PKGNAMEPREFIX	PORTNAME	PKGNAME_SUFFIX	PORTVERSION	Reason
mule-2.2.2	(empty)	mule	(empty)	2.2.2	No changes required
EmiClock-1.0.2	(empty)	emiclock	(empty)	1.0.2	No uppercase names for single programs
rdist-1.3alpha	(empty)	rdist	(empty)	1.3.a	No strings like <code>alpha</code> allowed
es-0.9-beta1	(empty)	es	(empty)	0.9.b1	No strings like <code>beta</code> allowed
mailman-2.0rc3	(empty)	mailman	(empty)	2.0.r3	No strings like <code>rc</code> allowed
v3.3beta021.src	(empty)	tiff	(empty)	3.3	What the heck was that anyway?
tvwm	(empty)	tvwm	(empty)	p11	Version string always required
piewm	(empty)	piewm	(empty)	1.0	Version string always required
xvgr-2.10p11	(empty)	xvgr	(empty)	2.10.1	<code>p1</code> allowed only when no major/minor version numbers

Distribution Name	PKGNAMEPREFIX	PORTNAME	PKGNAME_SUFFIX	PORTVERSION	Reason
gawk-2.15.6	ja-	gawk	(empty)	2.15.6	Japanese language version
psutils-1.13	(empty)	psutils	-letter	1.13	Paper size hardcoded at package build time
pkfonts	(empty)	pkfonts	300	1.0	Package for 300dpi fonts

If there is absolutely no trace of version information in the original source and it is unlikely that the original author will ever release another version, just set the version string to 1.0 (like the `piewm` example above). Otherwise, ask the original author or use the date string (`0.0.yyyy.mm.dd`) as the version.

5.3 Categorization

5.3.1 CATEGORIES

When a package is created, it is put under `/usr/ports/packages/All` and links are made from one or more subdirectories of `/usr/ports/packages`. The names of these subdirectories are specified by the variable `CATEGORIES`. It is intended to make life easier for the user when he is wading through the pile of packages on the FTP site or the CDROM. Please take a look at the current list of categories and pick the ones that are suitable for your port.

This list also determines where in the ports tree the port is imported. If you put more than one category here, it is assumed that the port files will be put in the subdirectory with the name in the first category. See below for more discussion about how to pick the right categories.

5.3.2 Current List of Categories

Here is the current list of port categories. Those marked with an asterisk (*) are *virtual* categories—those that do not have a corresponding subdirectory in the ports tree. They are only used as secondary categories, and only for search purposes.

Note: For non-virtual categories, you will find a one-line description in the `COMMENT` in that subdirectory's `Makefile`.

Category	Description	Notes
accessibility	Ports to help disabled users.	
afterstep*	Ports to support the AfterStep (http://www.afterstep.org) window manager.	

Category	Description	Notes
arabic	Arabic language support.	
archivers	Archiving tools.	
astro	Astronomical ports.	
audio	Sound support.	
benchmarks	Benchmarking utilities.	
biology	Biology-related software.	
cad	Computer aided design tools.	
chinese	Chinese language support.	
comms	Communication software.	Mostly software to talk to your serial port.
converters	Character code converters.	
databases	Databases.	
deskutils	Things that used to be on the desktop before computers were invented.	
devel	Development utilities.	Do not put libraries here just because they are libraries—unless they truly do not belong anywhere else, they should not be in this category.
dns	DNS-related software.	
docs*	Meta-ports for FreeBSD documentation.	
editors	General editors.	Specialized editors go in the section for those tools (e.g., a mathematical-formula editor will go in <code>math</code>).
elisp*	Emacs-lisp ports.	
emulators	Emulators for other operating systems.	Terminal emulators do <i>not</i> belong here—X-based ones should go to <code>x11</code> and text-based ones to either <code>comms</code> or <code>misc</code> , depending on the exact functionality.
finance	Monetary, financial and related applications.	
french	French language support.	
ftp	FTP client and server utilities.	If your port speaks both FTP and HTTP, put it in <code>ftp</code> with a secondary category of <code>www</code> .
games	Games.	
geography*	Geography-related software.	
german	German language support.	
gnome*	Ports from the GNOME (http://www.gnome.org) Project.	

Category	Description	Notes
gnustep*	Software related to the GNUstep desktop environment.	
graphics	Graphics utilities.	
hamradio*	Software for amateur radio.	
haskell*	Software related to the Haskell language.	
hebrew	Hebrew language support.	
hungarian	Hungarian language support.	
ipv6*	IPv6 related software.	
irc	Internet Relay Chat utilities.	
japanese	Japanese language support.	
java	Software related to the Java™ language.	The <code>java</code> category must not be the only one for a port. Save for ports directly related to the Java language, porters are also encouraged not to use <code>java</code> as the main category of a port.
kde*	Ports from the KDE (http://www.kde.org) Project.	
kld*	Kernel loadable modules.	
korean	Korean language support.	
lang	Programming languages.	
linux*	Linux applications and support utilities.	
lisp*	Software related to the Lisp language.	
mail	Mail software.	
math	Numerical computation software and other utilities for mathematics.	
mbone*	MBone applications.	
misc	Miscellaneous utilities	Basically things that do not belong anywhere else. If at all possible, try to find a better category for your port than <code>misc</code> , as ports tend to get overlooked in here.
multimedia	Multimedia software.	
net	Miscellaneous networking software.	
net-im	Instant messaging software.	
net-mgmt	Networking management software.	
net-p2p	Peer to peer network applications.	
news	USENET news software.	
palm	Software support for the Palm™ (http://www.palm.com/) series.	

Category	Description	Notes
parallel*	Applications dealing with parallelism in computing.	
pear*	Ports related to the Pear PHP framework.	
perl5*	Ports that require Perl version 5 to run.	
plan9*	Various programs from Plan9 (http://www.cs.bell-labs.com/plan9dist/).	
polish	Polish language support.	
ports-mgmt	Ports for managing, installing and developing FreeBSD ports and packages.	
portuguese	Portuguese language support.	
print	Printing software.	Desktop publishing tools (previewers, etc.) belong here too.
python*	Software related to the Python (http://www.python.org/) language.	
ruby*	Software related to the Ruby (http://www.ruby-lang.org/) language.	
rubygems*	Ports of RubyGems (http://www.rubygems.org/) packages.	
russian	Russian language support.	
scheme*	Software related to the Scheme language.	
science	Scientific ports that do not fit into other categories such as <code>astro</code> , <code>biology</code> and <code>math</code> .	
security	Security utilities.	
shells	Command line shells.	
spanish*	Spanish language support.	
sysutils	System utilities.	
tcl*	Ports that use Tcl to run.	
textproc	Text processing utilities.	It does not include desktop publishing tools, which go to <code>print</code> .
tk*	Ports that use Tk to run.	
ukrainian	Ukrainian language support.	
vietnamese	Vietnamese language support.	
windowmaker*	Ports to support the WindowMaker window manager.	

Category	Description	Notes
<code>www</code>	Software related to the World Wide Web.	HTML language support belongs here too.
<code>x11</code>	The X Window System and friends.	This category is only for software that directly supports the window system. Do not put regular X applications here; most of them should go into other <code>x11-*</code> categories (see below). If your port <i>is</i> an X application, define <code>USE_XLIB</code> (implied by <code>USE_IMAKE</code>) and put it in the appropriate category.
<code>x11-clocks</code>	X11 clocks.	
<code>x11-drivers</code>	X11 drivers.	
<code>x11-fm</code>	X11 file managers.	
<code>x11-fonts</code>	X11 fonts and font utilities.	
<code>x11-servers</code>	X11 servers.	
<code>x11-themes</code>	X11 themes.	
<code>x11-toolkits</code>	X11 toolkits.	
<code>x11-wm</code>	X11 window managers.	
<code>xfce*</code>	Ports related to the Xfce (http://www.xfce.org/) desktop environment.	
<code>zope*</code>	Zope (http://www.zope.org/) support.	

5.3.3 Choosing the Right Category

As many of the categories overlap, you often have to choose which of the categories should be the primary category of your port. There are several rules that govern this issue. Here is the list of priorities, in decreasing order of precedence:

- The first category must be a physical category (see above). This is necessary to make the packaging work. Virtual categories and physical categories may be intermixed after that.
- Language specific categories always come first. For example, if your port installs Japanese X11 fonts, then your `CATEGORIES` line would read `japanese x11-fonts`.
- Specific categories are listed before less-specific ones. For instance, an HTML editor should be listed as `www editors`, not the other way around. Also, you should not list `net` when the port belongs to any of `irc`, `mail`, `news`, `security`, or `www`, as `net` is included implicitly.
- `x11` is used as a secondary category only when the primary category is a natural language. In particular, you should not put `x11` in the category line for X applications.
- **Emacs** modes should be placed in the same ports category as the application supported by the mode, not in `editors`. For example, an **Emacs** mode to edit source files of some programming language should go into `lang`.

- Ports which install loadable kernel modules should have the virtual category `kld` in their `CATEGORIES` line.
- `misc` should not appear with any other non-virtual category. If you have `misc` with something else in your `CATEGORIES` line, that means you can safely delete `misc` and just put the port in that other subdirectory!
- If your port truly does not belong anywhere else, put it in `misc`.

If you are not sure about the category, please put a comment to that effect in your `send-pr(1)` submission so we can discuss it before we import it. If you are a committer, send a note to the FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>) so we can discuss it first. Too often, new ports are imported to the wrong category only to be moved right away. This causes unnecessary and undesirable bloat in the master source repository.

5.3.4 Proposing a New Category

As the Ports Collection has grown over time, various new categories have been introduced. New categories can either be *virtual* categories—those that do not have a corresponding subdirectory in the ports tree— or *physical* categories—those that do. The following text discusses the issues involved in creating a new physical category so that you can understand them before you propose one.

Our existing practice has been to avoid creating a new physical category unless either a large number of ports would logically belong to it, or the ports that would belong to it are a logically distinct group that is of limited general interest (for instance, categories related to spoken human languages), or preferably both.

The rationale for this is that such a change creates a fair amount of work (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/committers-guide/#ports) for both the committers and also for all users who track changes to the Ports Collection. In addition, proposed category changes just naturally seem to attract controversy. (Perhaps this is because there is no clear consensus on when a category is “too big”, nor whether categories should lend themselves to browsing (and thus what number of categories would be an ideal number), and so forth.)

Here is the procedure:

1. Propose the new category on FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>). You should include a detailed rationale for the new category, including why you feel the existing categories are not sufficient, and the list of existing ports proposed to move. (If there are new ports pending in **GNATS** that would fit this category, list them too.) If you are the maintainer and/or submitter, respectively, mention that as it may help you to make your case.
2. Participate in the discussion.
3. If it seems that there is support for your idea, file a PR which includes both the rationale and the list of existing ports that need to be moved. Ideally, this PR should also include patches for the following:
 - `Makefiles` for the new ports once they are repocopied
 - `Makefile` for the new category
 - `Makefile` for the old ports' categories
 - `Makefiles` for ports that depend on the old ports
 - (for extra credit, you can include the other files that have to change, as per the procedure in the Committer's Guide.)

4. Since it affects the ports infrastructure and involves not only performing repo-copies but also possibly running regression tests on the build cluster, the PR should be assigned to the Ports Management Team `<portmgr@FreeBSD.org>`.
5. If that PR is approved, a committer will need to follow the rest of the procedure that is outlined in the Committer's Guide (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/committers-guide/article.html#PORTS).

Proposing a new virtual category should be similar to the above but much less involved, since no ports will actually have to move. In this case, the only patches to include in the PR would be those to add the new category to the `CATEGORIES` of the affected ports.

5.3.5 Proposing Reorganizing All the Categories

Occasionally someone proposes reorganizing the categories with either a 2-level structure, or some other kind of keyword structure. To date, nothing has come of any of these proposals because, while they are very easy to make, the effort involved to retrofit the entire existing ports collection with any kind of reorganization is daunting to say the very least. Please read the history of these proposals in the mailing list archives before you post this idea; furthermore, you should be prepared to be challenged to offer a working prototype.

5.4 The Distribution Files

The second part of the `Makefile` describes the files that must be downloaded in order to build the port, and where they can be downloaded from.

5.4.1 `DISTVERSION/DISTNAME`

`DISTNAME` is the name of the port as called by the authors of the software. `DISTNAME` defaults to `${PORTNAME}-${PORTVERSION}`, so override it only if necessary. `DISTNAME` is only used in two places. First, the distribution file list (`DISTFILES`) defaults to `${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX}`. Second, the distribution file is expected to extract into a subdirectory named `WRKSR`, which defaults to `work/${DISTNAME}`.

Some vendor's distribution names which do not fit into the `${PORTNAME}-${PORTVERSION}`-scheme can be handled automatically by setting `DISTVERSION`. `PORTVERSION` and `DISTNAME` will be derived automatically, but can of course be overridden. The following table lists some examples:

<code>DISTVERSION</code>	<code>PORTVERSION</code>
0.7.1d	0.7.1.d
10Alpha3	10.a3
3Beta7-pre2	3.b7.p2
8:f_17	8f.17

Note: `PKGNAMEPREFIX` and `PKGNAMEPREFIX` do not affect `DISTNAME`. Also note that if `WRKSR` is equal to `work/${PORTNAME}-${PORTVERSION}` while the original source archive is named something other than `${PORTNAME}-${PORTVERSION}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX}`, you should probably leave `DISTNAME` alone—you are better off defining `DISTFILES` than having to set both `DISTNAME` and `WRKSR` (and possibly `EXTRACT_SUFFIX`).

5.4.2 MASTER_SITES

Record the directory part of the FTP/HTTP-URL pointing at the original tarball in `MASTER_SITES`. Do not forget the trailing slash (/)!

The `make` macros will try to use this specification for grabbing the distribution file with `FETCH` if they cannot find it already on the system.

It is recommended that you put multiple sites on this list, preferably from different continents. This will safeguard against wide-area network problems. We are even planning to add support for automatically determining the closest master site and fetching from there; having multiple sites will go a long way towards helping this effort.

If the original tarball is part of one of the popular archives such as SourceForge, GNU, or Perl CPAN, you may be able refer to those sites in an easy compact form using `MASTER_SITE_*` (e.g., `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE`, `MASTER_SITE_GNU` and `MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN`). Simply set `MASTER_SITES` to one of these variables and `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` to the path within the archive. Here is an example:

```
MASTER_SITES=          ${MASTER_SITE_GNU}
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR=    make
```

Or you can use a condensed format:

```
MASTER_SITES=    GNU/make
```

These variables are defined in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.sites.mk`. There are new entries added all the time, so make sure to check the latest version of this file before submitting a port.

Several *magic* macros exist for popular sites with a predictable directory structure. For these, just use the abbreviation and the system will try to guess the correct subdirectory for you.

```
MASTER_SITES=    SF
```

If the guess is incorrect, it can be overridden as follows.

```
MASTER_SITES=    SF/stardict/WyabdcRealPeopleTTS/${PORTVERSION}
```

This can be also written as

```
MASTER_SITES=    SF
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR=    stardict/WyabdcRealPeopleTTS/${PORTVERSION}
```

Table 5-1. Popular Magic `MASTER_SITES` Macros

Macro	Assumed subdirectory
<code>APACHE_JAKARTA</code>	<code>/dist/jakarta/\${PORTNAME:S,-"/,}/source</code>
<code>BERLIOS</code>	<code>/\${PORTNAME:L}</code>
<code>CHEESESHOP</code>	<code>/packages/source/source/\${DISTNAME:C/(.)*/\1}/\${DISTNAME}</code>

Macro

DEBIAN

GCC

GNOME

GNU

MOZDEV

PERL_CPAN

PYTHON

RUBYFORGE

SAVANNAH

SF

Assumed subdirectory

/debian/pool/main/\${PORTNAME:C/^(lib)?.*\$/\1}/\${PORTNAME}

/pub/gcc/releases/\${DISTNAME}

/pub/GNOME/sources/\${PORTNAME}/\${PORTVERSION:C/^[0-9]+\

/gnu/\${PORTNAME}

/pub/mozdev/\${PORTNAME:L}

/pub/CPAN/modules/by-module/\${PORTNAME:C/-.*//}

/ftp/python/\${PYTHON_PORTVERSION:C/rc[0-9]//}

/\${PORTNAME:L}

/\${PORTNAME:L}

/project/\${PORTNAME:L}/\${PORTNAME:L}/\${PORTVERSION}

5.4.3 EXTRACT_SUFX

If you have one distribution file, and it uses an odd suffix to indicate the compression mechanism, set

EXTRACT_SUFX.

For example, if the distribution file was named `foo.tgz` instead of the more normal `foo.tar.gz`, you would write:

```
DISTNAME=      foo
EXTRACT_SUFX=  .tgz
```

The `USE_BZIP2`, `USE_XZ` and `USE_ZIP` variables automatically set `EXTRACT_SUFX` to `.tar.bz2`, `.tar.xz` or `.zip` as necessary. If neither of these are set then `EXTRACT_SUFX` defaults to `.tar.gz`.

Note: You never need to set both `EXTRACT_SUFX` and `DISTFILES`.

5.4.4 DISTFILES

Sometimes the names of the files to be downloaded have no resemblance to the name of the port. For example, it might be called `source.tar.gz` or similar. In other cases the application's source code might be in several different archives, all of which must be downloaded.

If this is the case, set `DISTFILES` to be a space separated list of all the files that must be downloaded.

```
DISTFILES=      source1.tar.gz source2.tar.gz
```

If not explicitly set, `DISTFILES` defaults to `${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX}`.

5.4.5 EXTRACT_ONLY

If only some of the `DISTFILES` must be extracted—for example, one of them is the source code, while another is an uncompressed document—list the filenames that must be extracted in `EXTRACT_ONLY`.

```
DISTFILES=      source.tar.gz manual.html
EXTRACT_ONLY=   source.tar.gz
```

If *none* of the `DISTFILES` should be uncompressed then set `EXTRACT_ONLY` to the empty string.

```
EXTRACT_ONLY=
```

5.4.6 PATCHFILES

If your port requires some additional patches that are available by FTP or HTTP, set `PATCHFILES` to the names of the files and `PATCH_SITES` to the URL of the directory that contains them (the format is the same as `MASTER_SITES`).

If the patch is not relative to the top of the source tree (i.e., `WRKSRC`) because it contains some extra pathnames, set `PATCH_DIST_STRIP` accordingly. For instance, if all the pathnames in the patch have an extra `foozolic-1.0/` in front of the filenames, then set `PATCH_DIST_STRIP=-p1`.

Do not worry if the patches are compressed; they will be decompressed automatically if the filenames end with `.gz` or `.Z`.

If the patch is distributed with some other files, such as documentation, in a gzipped tarball, you cannot just use `PATCHFILES`. If that is the case, add the name and the location of the patch tarball to `DISTFILES` and `MASTER_SITES`. Then, use the `EXTRA_PATCHES` variable to point to those files and `bsd.port.mk` will automatically apply them for you. In particular, do *not* copy patch files into the `PATCHDIR` directory—that directory may not be writable.

Note: The tarball will have been extracted alongside the regular source by then, so there is no need to explicitly extract it if it is a regular gzipped or compressed tarball. If you do the latter, take extra care not to overwrite something that already exists in that directory. Also, do not forget to add a command to remove the copied patch in the `pre-clean` target.

5.4.7 Multiple Distribution Files or Patches from Different Sites and Subdirectories (`MASTER_SITES:n`)

(Consider this to be a somewhat “advanced topic”; those new to this document may wish to skip this section at first).

This section has information on the fetching mechanism known as both `MASTER_SITES:n` and `MASTER_SITES_NN`. We will refer to this mechanism as `MASTER_SITES:n`.

A little background first. OpenBSD has a neat feature inside the `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES` variables which allows files and patches to be postfixed with `:n` identifiers. Here, `n` can be both `[0-9]` and denote a group designation. For example:

```
DISTFILES=      alpha:0 beta:1
```

In OpenBSD, distribution file `alpha` will be associated with variable `MASTER_SITES0` instead of our common `MASTER_SITES` and `beta` with `MASTER_SITES1`.

This is a very interesting feature which can decrease that endless search for the correct download site.

Just picture 2 files in `DISTFILES` and 20 sites in `MASTER_SITES`, the sites slow as hell where `beta` is carried by all sites in `MASTER_SITES`, and `alpha` can only be found in the 20th site. It would be such a waste to check all of them if the maintainer knew this beforehand, would it not? Not a good start for that lovely weekend!

Now that you have the idea, just imagine more `DISTFILES` and more `MASTER_SITES`. Surely our “distfiles survey meister” would appreciate the relief to network strain that this would bring.

In the next sections, information will follow on the FreeBSD implementation of this idea. We improved a bit on OpenBSD’s concept.

5.4.7.1 Simplified Information

This section tells you how to quickly prepare fine grained fetching of multiple distribution files and patches from different sites and subdirectories. We describe here a case of simplified `MASTER_SITES:n` usage. This will be sufficient for most scenarios. However, if you need further information, you will have to refer to the next section.

Some applications consist of multiple distribution files that must be downloaded from a number of different sites. For example, **Ghostscript** consists of the core of the program, and then a large number of driver files that are used depending on the user’s printer. Some of these driver files are supplied with the core, but many others must be downloaded from a variety of different sites.

To support this, each entry in `DISTFILES` may be followed by a colon and a “tag name”. Each site listed in `MASTER_SITES` is then followed by a colon, and the tag that indicates which distribution files should be downloaded from this site.

For example, consider an application with the source split in two parts, `source1.tar.gz` and `source2.tar.gz`, which must be downloaded from two different sites. The port’s Makefile would include lines like Example 5-1.

Example 5-1. Simplified Use of `MASTER_SITES:n` with One File Per Site

```
MASTER_SITES= ftp://ftp.example1.com/:source1 \
               ftp://ftp.example2.com/:source2
DISTFILES=    source1.tar.gz:source1 \
               source2.tar.gz:source2
```

Multiple distribution files can have the same tag. Continuing the previous example, suppose that there was a third distfile, `source3.tar.gz`, that should be downloaded from `ftp.example2.com`. The Makefile would then be written like Example 5-2.

Example 5-2. Simplified Use of `MASTER_SITES:n` with More Than One File Per Site

```
MASTER_SITES= ftp://ftp.example1.com/:source1 \
               ftp://ftp.example2.com/:source2
DISTFILES=    source1.tar.gz:source1 \
               source2.tar.gz:source2 \
               source3.tar.gz:source2
```

5.4.7.2 Detailed Information

Okay, so the previous section example did not reflect your needs? In this section we will explain in detail how the fine grained fetching mechanism `MASTER_SITES:n` works and how you can modify your ports to use it.

1. Elements can be postfixed with `:n` where `n` is `[^:,]+`, i.e., `n` could conceptually be any alphanumeric string but we will limit it to `[a-zA-Z_][0-9a-zA-Z_]+` for now.

Moreover, string matching is case sensitive; i.e., `n` is different from `N`.

However, the following words cannot be used for postfixing purposes since they yield special meaning: `default`, `all` and `ALL` (they are used internally in item ii). Furthermore, `DEFAULT` is a special purpose word (check item 3).

2. Elements postfixed with `:n` belong to the group `n`, `:m` belong to group `m` and so forth.
3. Elements without a postfix are groupless, i.e., they all belong to the special group `DEFAULT`. If you postfix any elements with `DEFAULT`, you are just being redundant unless you want to have an element belonging to both `DEFAULT` and other groups at the same time (check item 5).

The following examples are equivalent but the first one is preferred:

```
MASTER_SITES=    alpha
MASTER_SITES=    alpha:DEFAULT
```

4. Groups are not exclusive, an element may belong to several different groups at the same time and a group can either have either several different elements or none at all. Repeated elements within the same group will be simply that, repeated elements.
5. When you want an element to belong to several groups at the same time, you can use the comma operator `(,)`.

Instead of repeating it several times, each time with a different postfix, we can list several groups at once in a single postfix. For instance, `:m,n,o` marks an element that belongs to group `m`, `n` and `o`.

All the following examples are equivalent but the last one is preferred:

```
MASTER_SITES=    alpha alpha:SOME_SITE
MASTER_SITES=    alpha:DEFAULT alpha:SOME_SITE
MASTER_SITES=    alpha:SOME_SITE,DEFAULT
MASTER_SITES=    alpha:DEFAULT,SOME_SITE
```

6. All sites within a given group are sorted according to `MASTER_SORT_AWK`. All groups within `MASTER_SITES` and `PATCH_SITES` are sorted as well.
7. Group semantics can be used in any of the following variables `MASTER_SITES`, `PATCH_SITES`, `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR`, `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR`, `DISTFILES`, and `PATCHFILES` according to the following syntax:

- a. All `MASTER_SITES`, `PATCH_SITES`, `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` and `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR` elements must be terminated with the forward slash `/` character. If any elements belong to any groups, the group postfix `:n` must come right after the terminator `/`. The `MASTER_SITES:n` mechanism relies on the existence of the terminator `/` to avoid confusing elements where a `:n` is a valid part of the element with occurrences where `:n` denotes group `n`. For compatibility purposes, since the `/` terminator was not required before in both `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` and `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR` elements, if the postfix immediate preceding character is not a `/` then `:n` will be considered a valid part of the element instead of a group postfix even if an element is postfixed with `:n`. See both Example 5-3 and Example 5-4.

Example 5-3. Detailed Use of MASTER_SITES:n in MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR

```
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR=      old:n new/:NEW
```

- Directories within group DEFAULT -> old:n
- Directories within group NEW -> new

Example 5-4. Detailed Use of MASTER_SITES:n with Comma Operator, Multiple Files, Multiple Sites and Multiple Subdirectories

```
MASTER_SITES=  http://site1/%SUBDIR%/ http://site2/:DEFAULT \
                http://site3/:group3 http://site4/:group4 \
                http://site5/:group5 http://site6/:group6 \
                http://site7/:DEFAULT,group6 \
                http://site8/%SUBDIR%/:group6,group7 \
                http://site9/:group8
DISTFILES=     file1 file2:DEFAULT file3:group3 \
                file4:group4,group5,group6 file5:grouping \
                file6:group7
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR=  directory-trial:1 directory-n/:groupn \
                    directory-one/:group6,DEFAULT \
                    directory
```

The previous example results in the following fine grained fetching. Sites are listed in the exact order they will be used.

- file1 will be fetched from
 - MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE
 - http://site1/directory-trial:1/
 - http://site1/directory-one/
 - http://site1/directory/
 - http://site2/
 - http://site7/
 - MASTER_SITE_BACKUP
- file2 will be fetched exactly as file1 since they both belong to the same group
 - MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE
 - http://site1/directory-trial:1/
 - http://site1/directory-one/
 - http://site1/directory/
 - http://site2/
 - http://site7/
 - MASTER_SITE_BACKUP

- `file3` will be fetched from
 - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
 - `http://site3/`
 - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file4` will be fetched from
 - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
 - `http://site4/`
 - `http://site5/`
 - `http://site6/`
 - `http://site7/`
 - `http://site8/directory-one/`
 - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file5` will be fetched from
 - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
 - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`
- `file6` will be fetched from
 - `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE`
 - `http://site8/`
 - `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`

8. How do I group one of the special variables from `bsd.sites.mk`, e.g., `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE`?

See Example 5-5.

Example 5-5. Detailed Use of `MASTER_SITES` with `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE`

```
MASTER_SITES=  http://site1/ ${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:S/$/:sourceforge,TEST/}
DISTFILES=     something.tar.gz:sourceforge
```

`something.tar.gz` will be fetched from all sites within `MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE`.

9. How do I use this with `PATCH*` variables?

All examples were done with `MASTER*` variables but they work exactly the same for `PATCH*` ones as can be seen in Example 5-6.

Example 5-6. Simplified Use of `MASTER_SITES:n` with `PATCH_SITES`

```
PATCH_SITES=    http://site1/ http://site2/:test
PATCHFILES=    patch1:test
```

5.4.7.3 What Does Change for Ports? What Does Not?

- i. All current ports remain the same. The `MASTER_SITES:n` feature code is only activated if there are elements postfixed with `:n` like elements according to the aforementioned syntax rules, especially as shown in item 7.
- ii. The port targets remain the same: `checksum`, `makesum`, `patch`, `configure`, `build`, etc. With the obvious exceptions of `do-fetch`, `fetch-list`, `master-sites` and `patch-sites`.
 - `do-fetch`: deploys the new grouping postfixed `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES` with their matching group elements within both `MASTER_SITES` and `PATCH_SITES` which use matching group elements within both `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` and `PATCH_SITE_SUBDIR`. Check Example 5-4.
 - `fetch-list`: works like old `fetch-list` with the exception that it groups just like `do-fetch`.
 - `master-sites` and `patch-sites`: (incompatible with older versions) only return the elements of group `DEFAULT`; in fact, they execute targets `master-sites-default` and `patch-sites-default` respectively.

Furthermore, using target either `master-sites-all` or `patch-sites-all` is preferred to directly checking either `MASTER_SITES` or `PATCH_SITES`. Also, directly checking is not guaranteed to work in any future versions. Check item iii.ii for more information on these new port targets.

iii. New port targets

- i. There are `master-sites-n` and `patch-sites-n` targets which will list the elements of the respective group `n` within `MASTER_SITES` and `PATCH_SITES` respectively. For instance, both `master-sites-DEFAULT` and `patch-sites-DEFAULT` will return the elements of group `DEFAULT`, `master-sites-test` and `patch-sites-test` of group `test`, and thereon.
- ii. There are new targets `master-sites-all` and `patch-sites-all` which do the work of the old `master-sites` and `patch-sites` ones. They return the elements of all groups as if they all belonged to the same group with the caveat that it lists as many `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP` and `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE` as there are groups defined within either `DISTFILES` or `PATCHFILES`; respectively for `master-sites-all` and `patch-sites-all`.

5.4.8 `DIST_SUBDIR`

Do not let your port clutter `/usr/ports/distfiles`. If your port requires a lot of files to be fetched, or contains a file that has a name that might conflict with other ports (e.g., `Makefile`), set `DIST_SUBDIR` to the name of the port

(`${PORTNAME}` or `${PKGNAMEPREFIX}${PORTNAME}` should work fine). This will change `DISTDIR` from the default `/usr/ports/distfiles` to `/usr/ports/distfiles/DIST_SUBDIR`, and in effect puts everything that is required for your port into that subdirectory.

It will also look at the subdirectory with the same name on the backup master site at `ftp.FreeBSD.org`. (Setting `DISTDIR` explicitly in your Makefile will not accomplish this, so please use `DIST_SUBDIR`.)

Note: This does not affect the `MASTER_SITES` you define in your Makefile.

5.4.9 ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES

If your port uses binary distfiles and has a license that requires that the source code is provided with packages distributed in binary form, e.g., GPL, `ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES` will instruct the FreeBSD build cluster to keep a copy of the files specified in `DISTFILES`. Users of these ports will generally not need these files, so it is a good idea to only add the source distfiles to `DISTFILES` when `PACKAGE_BUILDING` is defined.

Example 5-7. Use of `ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES`

```
.if defined(PACKAGE_BUILDING)
DISTFILES+=          foo.tar.gz
ALWAYS_KEEP_DISTFILES= yes
.endif
```

When adding extra files to `DISTFILES`, make sure you also add them to `distinfo`. Also, the additional files will normally be extracted into `WRKDIR` as well, which for some ports may lead to undesirable side effects and require special handling.

5.5 MAINTAINER

Set your mail-address here. Please. :-)

Note that only a single address without the comment part is allowed as a `MAINTAINER` value. The format used should be `user@hostname.domain`. Please do not include any descriptive text such as your real name in this entry—that merely confuses `bsd.port.mk`.

The maintainer is responsible for keeping the port up to date, and ensuring the port works correctly. For a detailed description of the responsibilities of a port maintainer, refer to the The challenge for port maintainers (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/contributing-ports/maintain-port.html) section.

Changes to the port will be sent to the maintainer of a port for review and approval before being committed. If the maintainer does not respond to an update request after two weeks (excluding major public holidays), then that is considered a maintainer timeout, and the update may be made without explicit maintainer approval. If the maintainer does not respond within three months, then that maintainer is considered absent without leave, and can be replaced as the maintainer of the particular port in question. Exceptions to this are anything maintained by the Ports Management Team <portmgr@FreeBSD.org>, or the Security Officer Team <security-officer@FreeBSD.org>. No unauthorized commits may ever be made to ports maintained by those groups.

We reserve the right to modify the maintainer's submission to better match existing policies and style of the Ports Collection without explicit blessing from the submitter. Also, large infrastructural changes can result in a port being modified without the maintainer's consent. These kinds of changes will never affect the port's functionality.

The Ports Management Team <portmgr@FreeBSD.org> reserves the right to revoke or override anyone's maintainership for any reason, and the Security Officer Team <security-officer@FreeBSD.org> reserves the right to revoke or override maintainership for security reasons.

5.6 COMMENT

This is a one-line description of the port. Please respect the following rules:

1. Try to keep the COMMENT value at no longer than 70 characters, as this line will be used by the pkg_info(1) utility to display a one-line summary of the port;
2. Do *not* include the package name (or version number of the software);
3. The comment should begin with a capital and end without a period;
4. Do not start with an indefinite article (i.e., A or An);
5. Names are capitalized (for example, Apache, JavaScript, Perl);
6. For lists of words, use the Oxford comma (e.g., green, red, and blue);
7. Spell check the text.

Here is an example:

```
COMMENT=          Cat chasing a mouse all over the screen
```

The COMMENT variable should immediately follow the MAINTAINER variable in the Makefile.

5.7 PORTSCOUT

Portscout is an automated distfile check utility for the FreeBSD Ports Collection, described in detail in Section 14.5.

The PORTSCOUT variable defines special conditions within which the **Portscout** distfile scanner should be restricted.

Situations where the PORTSCOUT variable should be set include:

- When distfiles should be ignored, whether for specific versions, or specific minor revisions. For example, to exclude version 8.2 from distfile version checks because it is known to be broken, add:

```
PORTSCOUT=        ignore:8.2
```

- When specific versions or specific major and minor revisions of a distfile should be checked. For example, if only version 0.6.4 should be monitored because newer versions have compatibility issues with FreeBSD, add:

```
PORTSCOUT=        limit:^0\.6\.4
```

- When URLs listing the available versions differ from the download URLs. For example, to limit distfile version checks to the download page for the databases/pgtune port, add:

```
PORTSCOUT=        site:http://pgfoundry.org/frs/?group_id=1000416
```

5.8 Dependencies

Many ports depend on other ports. This is a very convenient feature of most Unix-like operating systems, including FreeBSD. Multiple ports can share a common dependency, rather than bundling that dependency with every port or package that needs it. There are seven variables that can be used to ensure that all the required bits will be on the user's machine. There are also some pre-supported dependency variables for common cases, plus a few more to control the behavior of dependencies.

5.8.1 LIB_DEPENDS

This variable specifies the shared libraries this port depends on. It is a list of *lib:dir[:target]* tuples where *lib* is the name of the shared library, *dir* is the directory in which to find it in case it is not available, and *target* is the target to call in that directory. For example,

```
LIB_DEPENDS=    jpeg:${PORTSDIR}/graphics/jpeg
```

will check for a shared jpeg library with any version, and descend into the `graphics/jpeg` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found. The *target* part can be omitted if it is equal to `DEPENDS_TARGET` (which defaults to `install`).

Note: The *lib* part is a regular expression which is being looked up in the `ldconfig -r` output. Values such as `intl.9` and `intl.[5-7]` are allowed. The first pattern, `intl.9`, will match only version 9 of `intl`, while `intl.[5-7]`, will match any of: `intl.5`, `intl.6` or `intl.7`.

The dependency is checked twice, once from within the `extract` target and then from within the `install` target. Also, the name of the dependency is put into the package so that `pkg_add(1)` will automatically install it if it is not on the user's system.

5.8.2 RUN_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port depends on during run-time. It is a list of *path:dir[:target]* tuples where *path* is the name of the executable or file, *dir* is the directory in which to find it in case it is not available, and *target* is the target to call in that directory. If *path* starts with a slash (/), it is treated as a file and its existence is tested with `test -e`; otherwise, it is assumed to be an executable, and `which -s` is used to determine if the program exists in the search path.

For example,

```
RUN_DEPENDS=    ${LOCALBASE}/news/bin/innd:${PORTSDIR}/news/inn \
                xmlcatmgr:${PORTSDIR}/textproc/xmlcatmgr
```

will check if the file or directory `/usr/local/news/bin/innd` exists, and build and install it from the `news/inn` subdirectory of the ports tree if it is not found. It will also see if an executable called `xmlcatmgr` is in the search path, and descend into the `textproc/xmlcatmgr` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

Note: In this case, `innd` is actually an executable; if an executable is in a place that is not expected to be in the search path, you should use the full pathname.

Note: The official search `PATH` used on the ports build cluster is

```
/sbin:/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin
```

The dependency is checked from within the `install` target. Also, the name of the dependency is put into the package so that `pkg_add(1)` will automatically install it if it is not on the user's system. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

A quite common situation is when `RUN_DEPENDS` is literally the same as `BUILD_DEPENDS`, especially if ported software is written in a scripted language or if it requires the same build and run-time environment. In this case, it is both tempting and intuitive to directly assign one to the other:

```
RUN_DEPENDS=    ${BUILD_DEPENDS}
```

However, such assignment can pollute run-time dependencies with entries not defined in the port's original `BUILD_DEPENDS`. This happens because of `make(1)`'s lazy evaluation of variable assignment. Consider a Makefile with `USE_*` variables, which are processed by `ports/Mk/bsd.*.mk` to augment initial build dependencies. For example, `USE_GMAKE=yes` adds `devel/gmake` to `BUILD_DEPENDS`. To prevent such additional dependencies from polluting `RUN_DEPENDS`, take care to assign with expansion, i.e., expand the value before assigning it to the variable:

```
RUN_DEPENDS:=    ${BUILD_DEPENDS}
```

5.8.3 BUILD_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to build. Like `RUN_DEPENDS`, it is a list of *path:dir[:target]* tuples. For example,

```
BUILD_DEPENDS=  unzip:${PORTSDIR}/archivers/unzip
```

will check for an executable called `unzip`, and descend into the `archivers/unzip` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

Note: “build” here means everything from extraction to compilation. The dependency is checked from within the `extract` target. The *target* part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`

5.8.4 FETCH_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to fetch. Like the previous two, it is a list of *path:dir[:target]* tuples. For example,

```
FETCH_DEPENDS=  ncftp2:${PORTSDIR}/net/ncftp2
```

will check for an executable called `ncftp2`, and descend into the `net/ncftp2` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

The dependency is checked from within the `fetch` target. The `target` part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

5.8.5 EXTRACT_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires for extraction. Like the previous, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
EXTRACT_DEPENDS=      unzip:${PORTSDIR}/archivers/unzip
```

will check for an executable called `unzip`, and descend into the `archivers/unzip` subdirectory of your ports tree to build and install it if it is not found.

The dependency is checked from within the `extract` target. The `target` part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

Note: Use this variable only if the extraction does not already work (the default assumes `gzip`) and cannot be made to work using `USE_ZIP` or `USE_BZIP2` described in Section 5.8.8.

5.8.6 PATCH_DEPENDS

This variable specifies executables or files this port requires to patch. Like the previous, it is a list of `path:dir[:target]` tuples. For example,

```
PATCH_DEPENDS=  ${NONEXISTENT}:${PORTSDIR}/java/jfc:extract
```

will descend into the `java/jfc` subdirectory of your ports tree to extract it.

The dependency is checked from within the `patch` target. The `target` part can be omitted if it is the same as `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

5.8.7 USES

There several parameters exist for defining different kind of features and dependencies that the port in question uses. They can be specified by adding the following line to the `Makefile` of the port:

```
USES= feature[:arguments]
```

For the complete list of such values, please see Section 15.1.

Warning: `USES` cannot be assigned after inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

5.8.8 USE_*

Several variables exist to define common dependencies shared by many ports. Their use is optional, but helps to reduce the verbosity of the port Makefiles. Each of them is styled as `USE_*`. These variables may be used only in the port Makefiles and `ports/Mk/bsd.*.mk`. They are not meant for user-settable options — use `PORT_OPTIONS` for that purpose.

Note: It is *always* incorrect to set any `USE_*` in `/etc/make.conf`. For instance, setting

```
USE_GCC=3.4
```

would add a dependency on `gcc34` for every port, including `gcc34` itself!

Table 5-2. The `USE_*` Variables

Variable	Means
<code>USE_BZIP2</code>	The port's tarballs are compressed with <code>bzip2</code> .
<code>USE_ZIP</code>	The port's tarballs are compressed with <code>zip</code> .
<code>USE_CDRTOOLS</code>	The port requires cdrecord either from <code>sysutils/cdrtools</code> or <code>sysutils/cdrtools-cjk</code> , according to the user's preference.
<code>USE_GCC</code>	The port requires a specific version of <code>gcc</code> to build. The exact version can be specified with value such as <code>3.4</code> . The minimal required version can be specified as <code>3.4+</code> . The <code>gcc</code> from the base system is used when it satisfies the requested version, otherwise an appropriate <code>gcc</code> is compiled from ports and the <code>CC</code> and <code>CXX</code> variables are adjusted.

Variables related to **gmake** and the `configure` script are described in Section 6.3, while **autoconf**, **automake** and **libtool** are described in Section 6.4. **Perl** related variables are described in Section 6.7. X11 variables are listed in Section 6.8. Section 6.9 deals with GNOME and Section 6.11 with KDE related variables. Section 6.12 documents Java variables, while Section 6.13 contains information on **Apache**, **PHP** and **PEAR** modules. **Python** is discussed in Section 6.14, while **Ruby** in Section 6.17. Section 6.18 provides variables used for **SDL** applications and finally, Section 6.21 contains information on **Xfce**.

5.8.9 Minimal Version of a Dependency

A minimal version of a dependency can be specified in any `*_DEPENDS` variable except `LIB_DEPENDS` using the following syntax:

```
p5-Spiffy>0.26:${PORTSDIR}/devel/p5-Spiffy
```

The first field contains a dependent package name, which must match the entry in the package database, a comparison sign, and a package version. The dependency is satisfied if `p5-Spiffy-0.26` or newer is installed on the machine.

5.8.10 Notes on Dependencies

As mentioned above, the default target to call when a dependency is required is `DEPENDS_TARGET`. It defaults to `install`. This is a user variable; it is never defined in a port's Makefile. If your port needs a special way to handle a dependency, use the `:target` part of the `*_DEPENDS` variables instead of redefining `DEPENDS_TARGET`.

When you type `make clean`, its dependencies are automatically cleaned too. If you do not wish this to happen, define the variable `NOCLEANDEPENDS` in your environment. This may be particularly desirable if the port has something that takes a long time to rebuild in its dependency list, such as KDE, GNOME or Mozilla.

To depend on another port unconditionally, use the variable `${NONEXISTENT}` as the first field of `BUILD_DEPENDS` or `RUN_DEPENDS`. Use this only when you need to get the source of the other port. You can often save compilation time by specifying the target too. For instance

```
BUILD_DEPENDS=  ${NONEXISTENT}:${PORTSDIR}/graphics/jpeg:extract
```

will always descend to the `jpeg` port and extract it.

5.8.11 Circular Dependencies Are Fatal

Important: Do not introduce any circular dependencies into the ports tree!

The ports building technology does not tolerate circular dependencies. If you introduce one, you will have someone, somewhere in the world, whose FreeBSD installation will break almost immediately, with many others quickly to follow. These can really be hard to detect; if in doubt, before you make that change, make sure you have done the following: `cd /usr/ports; make index`. That process can be quite slow on older machines, but you may be able to save a large number of people—including yourself—a lot of grief in the process.

5.8.12 Problems Caused by Automatic Dependencies

Dependencies must be declared either explicitly or by using the `OPTIONS` framework. Using other methods like automatic detection complicates indexing, which causes problems for port and package management.

Example 5-8. Wrong Declaration of an Optional Dependency

```
.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if exists(${LOCALBASE}/bin/foo)
LIB_DEPENDS=  bar:${PORTSDIR}/foo/bar
.endif
```

The problem with trying to automatically add dependencies is that files and settings outside an individual port can change at any time. For example: an index is built, then a batch of ports are installed. But one of the ports installs the tested file. The index is now incorrect, because an installed port unexpectedly has a new dependency. The index may still be wrong even after rebuilding if other ports also determine their need for dependencies based on the existence of other files.

Example 5-9. Correct Declaration of an Optional Dependency

```

OPTIONS_DEFINE= BAR
BAR_DESC=      Bar support

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MBAR}
LIB_DEPENDS=   bar:${PORTSDIR}/foo/bar
.endif

```

Testing option variables is the correct method. It will not cause inconsistencies in the index of a batch of ports, provided the options were defined prior to the index build. Simple scripts can then be used to automate the building, installation, and updating of these ports and their packages.

5.8.13 USE_ and WANT_

USE_ variables are set by the port maintainer to define software on which this port depends. A port that needs Firefox would set

```
USE_FIREFOX=    yes
```

Some USE_ variables can accept version numbers or other parameters. For example, a port that requires Apache 2.2 would set

```
USE_APACHE=     22
```

For more control over dependencies in some cases, WANT_ variables are available to more precisely specify what is needed. For example, consider the `mail/squirrelmail` port. This port needs some PHP modules, which are listed in the USE_PHP variable:

```
USE_PHP=        session mhash gettext mbstring pcre openssl xml
```

Those modules may be available in CLI or web versions, so the web version is selected with a WANT_ variable:

```
WANT_PHP_WEB=   yes
```

Available USE_ and WANT_ variables are defined in the files in `/usr/ports/Mk`.

5.9 MASTERDIR

If your port needs to build slightly different versions of packages by having a variable (for instance, resolution, or paper size) take different values, create one subdirectory per package to make it easier for users to see what to do, but try to share as many files as possible between ports. Typically you only need a very short Makefile in all but one of the directories if you use variables cleverly. In the sole Makefile, you can use MASTERDIR to specify the directory where the rest of the files are. Also, use a variable as part of PKGNAMESUFFIX so the packages will have different names.

This will be best demonstrated by an example. This is part of `japanese/xdvi300/Makefile`;


```

PORTNAME=      xdvi
PORTVERSION=   17
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ja-
PKGNAME_SUFFIX= ${RESOLUTION}
:
# default
RESOLUTION?=   300
.if ${RESOLUTION} != 118 && ${RESOLUTION} != 240 && \
    ${RESOLUTION} != 300 && ${RESOLUTION} != 400
    @${ECHO_MSG} "Error: invalid value for RESOLUTION: \"${RESOLUTION}\""
    @${ECHO_MSG} "Possible values are: 118, 240, 300 (default) and 400."
    @${FALSE}
.endif

```

japanese/xdvi300 also has all the regular patches, package files, etc. If you type `make` there, it will take the default value for the resolution (300) and build the port normally.

As for other resolutions, this is the *entire* `xdvi118/Makefile`:

```

RESOLUTION=    118
MASTERDIR=     ${CURDIR}/../xdvi300

.include "${MASTERDIR}/Makefile"

```

(`xdvi240/Makefile` and `xdvi400/Makefile` are similar). The `MASTERDIR` definition tells `bsd.port.mk` that the regular set of subdirectories like `FILESDIR` and `SCRIPTDIR` are to be found under `xdvi300`. The `RESOLUTION=118` line will override the `RESOLUTION=300` line in `xdvi300/Makefile` and the port will be built with resolution set to 118.

5.10 Man Pages

The `MAN[1-9LN]` variables will automatically add any manpages to `pkg-plist` (this means you must *not* list manpages in the `pkg-plist`—see generating `PLIST` for more). It also makes the install stage automatically compress or uncompress manpages depending on the setting of `NO_MANCOMPRESS` in `/etc/make.conf`.

If your port tries to install multiple names for manpages using symlinks or hardlinks, you must use the `MLINKS` variable to identify these. The link installed by your port will be destroyed and recreated by `bsd.port.mk` to make sure it points to the correct file. Any manpages listed in `MLINKS` must not be listed in the `pkg-plist`.

To specify whether the manpages are compressed upon installation, use the `MANCOMPRESSED` variable. This variable can take three values, `yes`, `no` and `maybe`. `yes` means manpages are already installed compressed, `no` means they are not, and `maybe` means the software already respects the value of `NO_MANCOMPRESS` so `bsd.port.mk` does not have to do anything special.

`MANCOMPRESSED` is automatically set to `yes` if `USE_IMAKE` is set and `NO_INSTALL_MANPAGES` is not set, and to `no` otherwise. You do not have to explicitly define it unless the default is not suitable for your port.

If your port anchors its man tree somewhere other than `PREFIX`, you can use the `MANPREFIX` to set it. Also, if only manpages in certain sections go in a non-standard place, such as some `perl` modules ports, you can set individual man paths using `MANsectPREFIX` (where *sect* is one of 1-9, L or N).

If your manpages go to language-specific subdirectories, set the name of the languages to `MANLANG`. The value of this variable defaults to `"` (i.e., English only).

Here is an example that puts it all together.

```
MAN1=          foo.1
MAN3=          bar.3
MAN4=          baz.4
MLINKS=        foo.1 alt-name.8
MANLANG=       "" ja
MAN3PREFIX=    ${PREFIX}/share/foobar
MANCOMPRESSED= yes
```

This states that six files are installed by this port;

```
${MANPREFIX}/man/man1/foo.1.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/ja/man1/foo.1.gz
${PREFIX}/share/foobar/man/man3/bar.3.gz
${PREFIX}/share/foobar/man/ja/man3/bar.3.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/man4/baz.4.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/ja/man4/baz.4.gz
```

Additionally `${MANPREFIX}/man/man8/alt-name.8.gz` may or may not be installed by your port. Regardless, a symlink will be made to join the `foo(1)` manpage and `alt-name(8)` manpage.

If only some manpages are translated, you can use several variables dynamically created from `MANLANG` content:

```
MANLANG=       "" de ja
MAN1=          foo.1
MAN1_EN=       bar.1
MAN3_DE=       baz.3
```

This translates into this list of files:

```
${MANPREFIX}/man/man1/foo.1.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/de/man1/foo.1.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/ja/man1/foo.1.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/man1/bar.1.gz
${MANPREFIX}/man/de/man3/baz.3.gz
```

5.11 Info Files

If your package needs to install GNU info files, they should be listed in the `INFO` variable (without the trailing `.info`), one entry per document. These files are assumed to be installed to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH`. You can change `INFO_PATH` if your package uses a different location. However, this is not recommended. These entries contain just the path relative to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH`. For example, `lang/gcc34` installs info files to `PREFIX/INFO_PATH/gcc34`, and `INFO` will be something like this:

```
INFO= gcc34/cpp gcc34/cppinternals gcc34/g77 ...
```

Appropriate installation/de-installation code will be automatically added to the temporary `pkg-plist` before package registration.

5.12 Makefile Options

Many applications can be built with optional or differing configurations. Examples include choice of natural (human) language, GUI versus command-line, or type of database to support. Users may need a different configuration than the default, so the ports system provides hooks the port author can use to control which variant will be built. Supporting these options properly will make users happy, and effectively provide two or more ports for the price of one.

5.12.1 Knobs

5.12.1.1 `WITH_*` and `WITHOUT_*`

These variables are designed to be set by the system administrator. There are many that are standardized in the `ports/KNOBS` (<http://svn.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/KNOBS?view=markup>) file.

When creating a port, do not make knob names specific to a given application. For example in Avahi port, use `WITHOUT_MDNS` instead of `WITHOUT_AVAHI_MDNS`.

Note: You should not assume that a `WITH_*` necessarily has a corresponding `WITHOUT_*` variable and vice versa. In general, the default is simply assumed.

Note: Unless otherwise specified, these variables are only tested for being set or not set, rather than being set to a specific value such as `YES` or `NO`.

Table 5-3. Common `WITH_*` and `WITHOUT_*` Variables

Variable	Means
<code>WITHOUT_NLS</code>	If set, says that internationalization is not needed, which can save compile time. By default, internationalization is used.
<code>WITH_OPENSSL_BASE</code>	Use the version of OpenSSL in the base system.
<code>WITH_OPENSSL_PORT</code>	Installs the version of OpenSSL from <code>security/openssl</code> , even if the base is up to date.
<code>WITHOUT_X11</code>	Ports that can be built both with and without X support are normally built with X support. If this variable is defined, then the version that does not have X support will be built instead.

5.12.1.2 Knob Naming

Porters should use like-named knobs, both for the benefit of end-users and to help keep the number of knob names down. A list of popular knob names can be found in the `KNOBS` (<http://svn.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/KNOBS?view=markup>) file.

Knob names should reflect what the knob is and does. When a port has a lib-prefix in the `PORTNAME` the lib-prefix should be dropped in knob naming.

5.12.2 OPTIONS

5.12.2.1 Background

The `OPTIONS_*` variables give the user installing the port a dialog showing the available options, and then saves those options to `/var/db/ports/${UNIQUENAME}/options`. The next time the port is built, the options are reused.

When the user runs `make config` (or runs `make build` for the first time), the framework checks for `/var/db/ports/${UNIQUENAME}/options`. If that file does not exist, the values of `OPTIONS_*` are used, and a dialog box is displayed where the options can be enabled or disabled. Then the `options` file is saved and the configured variables are used when building the port.

If a new version of the port adds new `OPTIONS`, the dialog will be presented to the user with the saved values of old `OPTIONS` prefilled.

`make showconfig` shows the saved configuration. Use `make rmconfig` to remove the saved configuration.

5.12.2.2 Syntax

`OPTIONS_DEFINE` contains a list of `OPTIONS` to be used. These are independent of each other and are not grouped:

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= OPT1 OPT2
```

Once defined, `OPTIONS` are described (optional, but strongly recommended):

```
OPT1_DESC=      Describe OPT1
OPT2_DESC=      Describe OPT2
OPT3_DESC=      Describe OPT3
OPT4_DESC=      Describe OPT4
OPT5_DESC=      Describe OPT5
OPT6_DESC=      Describe OPT6
```

Tip: `ports/Mk/bsd.options.desc.mk` has descriptions for many common `OPTIONS`; there is usually no need to override these.

Tip: When describing options, view it from the perspective of the user: “What does it do?” and “Why would I want to enable this?” Do not just repeat the name. For example, describing the `NLS` option as “include NLS support” does not help the user, who can already see the option name but may not know what it means. Describing it as “Native Language Support via gettext utilities” is much more helpful.

`OPTIONS` can be grouped as radio choices, where only one choice from each group is allowed:

```
OPTIONS_SINGLE=      SG1
OPTIONS_SINGLE_SG1=  OPT3 OPT4
```

OPTIONS can be grouped as radio choices, where none or only one choice from each group is allowed:

```
OPTIONS_RADIO=          RG1
OPTIONS_RADIO_RG1=      OPT7 OPT8
```

OPTIONS can also be grouped as “multiple-choice” lists, where *at least one* option must be enabled:

```
OPTIONS_MULTII=         MG1
OPTIONS_MULTII_MG1=     OPT5 OPT6
```

OPTIONS can also be grouped as “multiple-choice” lists, where none or any option can be enabled:

```
OPTIONS_GROUP=          GG1
OPTIONS_GROUP_GG1=      OPT9 OPT10
```

OPTIONS are unset by default, unless they are listed in OPTIONS_DEFAULT:

```
OPTIONS_DEFAULT=        OPT1 OPT3 OPT6
```

OPTIONS definitions must appear before the inclusion of `bsd.port.options.mk`. The `PORT_OPTIONS` variable can only be tested after the inclusion of `bsd.port.options.mk`. Inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk` can be used instead, too, and is still widely used in ports written before the introduction of `bsd.port.options.mk`. But be aware that some variables will not work as expected after the inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk`, typically some `USE_*` flags.

Example 5-10. Simple Use of OPTIONS

```
OPTIONS_DEFINE= FOO BAR
FOO_DESC=      Enable option foo
BAR_DESC=      Support feature bar

OPTIONS_DEFAULT=FOO

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MFOO}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--with-foo
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--without-foo
.endif

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MBAR}
RUN_DEPENDS+=  bar:${PORTSDIR}/bar/bar
.endif

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

Example 5-11. Check for Unset Port OPTIONS

```
.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MEXAMPLES}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--without-examples
.endif
```

Example 5-12. Practical Use of OPTIONS

```

OPTIONS_DEFINE=          EXAMPLES

OPTIONS_SINGLE=          BACKEND
OPTIONS_SINGLE_BACKEND=  MYSQL PGSQL BDB

OPTIONS_MULTI=          AUTH
OPTIONS_MULTI_AUTH=     LDAP PAM SSL

EXAMPLES_DESC=          Install extra examples
MYSQL_DESC=             Use MySQL as backend
PGSQL_DESC=             Use PostgreSQL as backend
BDB_DESC=              Use Berkeley DB as backend
LDAP_DESC=             Build with LDAP authentication support
PAM_DESC=              Build with PAM support
SSL_DESC=              Build with OpenSSL support

OPTIONS_DEFAULT=        PGSQL LDAP SSL

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MPGSQL}
USE_PGSQL=              yes
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=        --with-postgres
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=        --without-postgres
.endif

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MICU}
LIB_DEPENDS+=          icuuc:${PORTSDIR}/devel/icu
.endif

.if ! ${PORT_OPTIONS:MEXAMPLES}
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=        --without-examples
.endif

# Check other OPTIONS

.include <bsd.port.mk>

```

5.12.2.3 Default Options

The following options are always on by default.

- DOCS — build and install documentation.
- NLS — Native Language Support.
- EXAMPLES — build and install examples.
- IPV6 — IPv6 protocol support.

Note: There is no need to add these to `OPTIONS_DEFAULT`. To have them show up in the options selection dialog, however, they must be added to `OPTIONS_DEFINE`.

5.12.3 Feature Auto-Activation

When using a GNU configure script, keep an eye on which optional features are activated by auto-detection. Explicitly disable optional features you do not wish to be used by passing respective `--without-xxx` or `--disable-xxx` in `CONFIGURE_ARGS`.

Example 5-13. Wrong Handling of an Option

```
.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MFOO}
LIB_DEPENDS+=          foo:${PORTSDIR}/devel/foo
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=       --enable-foo
.endif
```

In the example above, imagine a library `libfoo` is installed on the system. The user does not want this application to use `libfoo`, so he toggled the option off in the `make config` dialog. But the application's configure script detects the library present in the system and includes its support in the resulting executable. Now when the user decides to remove `libfoo` from the system, the ports system does not protest (no dependency on `libfoo` was recorded) but the application breaks.

Example 5-14. Correct Handling of an Option

```
.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MFOO}
LIB_DEPENDS+=          foo:${PORTSDIR}/devel/foo
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=       --enable-foo
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=       --disable-foo
.endif
```

In the second example, the library `libfoo` is explicitly disabled. The configure script does not enable related features in the application, despite library's presence in the system.

Note: Under some circumstances, the shorthand conditional syntax can cause problems with complex constructs. If you receive errors such as `Malformed conditional`, an alternative syntax can be used.

```
.if !empty(VARIABLE:MVALUE)
# as an alternative to
.if ${VARIABLE:MVALUE}
```

5.13 Specifying the Working Directory

Each port is extracted in to a working directory, which must be writable. The ports system defaults to having the `DISTFILES` unpack in to a directory called `${DISTNAME}`. In other words, if you have set:

```
PORTNAME=      foo
PORTVERSION=   1.0
```

then the port's distribution files contain a top-level directory, `foo-1.0`, and the rest of the files are located under that directory.

There are a number of variables you can override if that is not the case.

5.13.1 `WRKSRC`

The variable lists the name of the directory that is created when the application's distfiles are extracted. If our previous example extracted into a directory called `foo` (and not `foo-1.0`) you would write:

```
WRKSRC= ${WRKDIR}/foo
```

or possibly

```
WRKSRC= ${WRKDIR}/${PORTNAME}
```

5.13.2 `NO_WRKSUBDIR`

If the port does not extract in to a subdirectory at all then you should set `NO_WRKSUBDIR` to indicate that.

```
NO_WRKSUBDIR=  yes
```

5.14 Conflict Handling

There are three different variables to register a conflict between packages and ports: `CONFLICTS`, `CONFLICTS_INSTALL` and `CONFLICTS_BUILD`.

Note: The conflict variables automatically set the variable `IGNORE`, which is more fully documented in Section 12.14.

When removing one of several conflicting ports, it is advisable to retain the `CONFLICTS` entries in those other ports for a few months to cater for users who only update once in a while.

5.14.1 `CONFLICTS_INSTALL`

If your package cannot coexist with other packages (because of file conflicts, runtime incompatibilities, etc.), list the other package names in the `CONFLICTS_INSTALL` variable. You can use shell globs like `*` and `?` here. Package names should be enumerated the same way they appear in `/var/db/pkg`. Please make sure that

`CONFLICTS_INSTALL` does not match this port's package itself. Otherwise enforcing its installation with `FORCE_PKG_REGISTER` will no longer work. The `CONFLICTS_INSTALL` check is done after the build stage and prior to the install stage.

5.14.2 `CONFLICTS_BUILD`

If your port cannot be built if a certain port is already installed, list the other port names in the `CONFLICTS_BUILD` variable. You can use shell globs like `*` and `?` here. Package names should be enumerated the same way they appear in `/var/db/pkg`. The `CONFLICTS_BUILD` check is done prior to the build stage. Build conflicts are not recorded in the resulting package.

5.14.3 `CONFLICTS`

If your port cannot be built if a certain port is already installed and the resulting package cannot coexist with the other package, list the other package name in the `CONFLICTS` variable. You can use shell globs like `*` and `?` here. Package names should be enumerated the same way they appear in `/var/db/pkg`. Please make sure that `CONFLICTS_INSTALL` does not match this port's package itself. Otherwise enforcing its installation with `FORCE_PKG_REGISTER` will no longer work. The `CONFLICTS` check is done prior to the build stage and prior to the install stage.

5.15 Installing Files

5.15.1 `INSTALL_*` Macros

Do use the macros provided in `bsd.port.mk` to ensure correct modes and ownership of files in your own `*-install` targets.

- `INSTALL_PROGRAM` is a command to install binary executables.
- `INSTALL_SCRIPT` is a command to install executable scripts.
- `INSTALL_LIB` is a command to install shared libraries.
- `INSTALL_KLD` is a command to install kernel loadable modules. Some architectures do not like having the modules stripped, so use this command instead of `INSTALL_PROGRAM`.
- `INSTALL_DATA` is a command to install sharable data.
- `INSTALL_MAN` is a command to install manpages and other documentation (it does not compress anything).

These are basically the `install` command with all the appropriate flags.

5.15.2 Stripping Binaries and Shared Libraries

Do not strip binaries manually unless you have to. All binaries should be stripped, but the `INSTALL_PROGRAM` macro will install and strip a binary at the same time (see the next section). The `INSTALL_LIB` macro does the same thing to shared libraries.

If you need to strip a file, but wish to use neither `INSTALL_PROGRAM` nor `INSTALL_LIB` macros, `${STRIP_CMD}` will strip your program or shared library. This is typically done within the `post-install` target. For example:

```
post-install:
    ${STRIP_CMD} ${PREFIX}/bin/xd1
```

Use the `file(1)` command on the installed executable to check whether the binary is stripped or not. If it does not say `not stripped`, it is stripped. Additionally, `strip(1)` will not strip a previously stripped program; it will instead exit cleanly.

5.15.3 Installing a Whole Tree of Files

Sometimes, there is a need to install a big number of files, preserving their hierarchical organization, i.e., copying over a whole directory tree from `WRKSRC` to a target directory under `PREFIX`.

Two macros exist for this situation. The advantage of using these macros instead of `cp` is that they guarantee proper file ownership and permissions on target files. The first macro, `COPYTREE_BIN`, will set all the installed files to be executable, thus being suitable for installing into `PREFIX/bin`. The second macro, `COPYTREE_SHARE`, does not set executable permissions on files, and is therefore suitable for installing files under `PREFIX/share` target.

```
post-install:
    ${MKDIR} ${EXAMPLESDIR}
    (cd ${WRKSRC}/examples && ${COPYTREE_SHARE} . ${EXAMPLESDIR})
```

This example will install the contents of `examples` directory in the vendor distfile to the proper `examples` location of your port.

```
post-install:
    ${MKDIR} ${DATADIR}/summer
    (cd ${WRKSRC}/temperatures && ${COPYTREE_SHARE} "June July August" ${DATADIR}/summer)
```

And this example will install the data of summer months to the `summer` subdirectory of a `DATADIR`.

Additional `find` arguments can be passed via the third argument to the `COPYTREE_*` macros. For example, to install all files from the first example except Makefiles, one can use the following command.

```
post-install:
    ${MKDIR} ${EXAMPLESDIR}
    (cd ${WRKSRC}/examples && \
        ${COPYTREE_SHARE} . ${EXAMPLESDIR} "! -name Makefile")
```

Note that these macros does not add the installed files to `pkg-plist`. You still need to list them.

5.15.4 Install Additional Documentation

If your software has some documentation other than the standard `man` and `info` pages that you think is useful for the user, install it under `PREFIX/share/doc`. This can be done, like the previous item, in the `post-install` target.

Create a new directory for your port. The directory name should reflect what the port is. This usually means `PORTNAME`. However, if you think the user might want different versions of the port to be installed at the same time, you can use the whole `PKGNAME`.

Make the installation dependent on the variable `DOCS` option so that users can disable it in `/etc/make.conf`, like this:

```
post-install:
.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MDOCS}
    ${MKDIR} ${DOCSDIR}
    ${INSTALL_MAN} ${WRKSRCS}/docs/xvdocs.ps ${DOCSDIR}
.endif
```

Here are some handy variables and how they are expanded by default when used in the Makefile:

- `DATADIR` gets expanded to `PREFIX/share/PORTNAME`.
- `DATADIR_REL` gets expanded to `share/PORTNAME`.
- `DOCSDIR` gets expanded to `PREFIX/share/doc/PORTNAME`.
- `DOCSDIR_REL` gets expanded to `share/doc/PORTNAME`.
- `EXAMPLESDIR` gets expanded to `PREFIX/share/examples/PORTNAME`.
- `EXAMPLESDIR_REL` gets expanded to `share/examples/PORTNAME`.

Note: The `DOCS` option only controls additional documentation installed in `DOCSDIR`. It does not apply to standard man pages and info pages. Things installed in `DATADIR` and `EXAMPLESDIR` are controlled by `DATA` and `EXAMPLES` options, respectively.

These variables are exported to `PLIST_SUB`. Their values will appear there as pathnames relative to `PREFIX` if possible. That is, `share/doc/PORTNAME` will be substituted for `%%DOCSDIR%%` in the packing list by default, and so on. (See more on `pkg-plist` substitution here.)

All conditionally installed documentation files and directories should be included in `pkg-plist` with the `%%PORTDOCS%%` prefix, for example:

```
%%PORTDOCS%%%%DOCSDIR%%/AUTHORS
%%PORTDOCS%%%%DOCSDIR%%/CONTACT
%%PORTDOCS%%@dirrm %%DOCSDIR%%
```

As an alternative to enumerating the documentation files in `pkg-plist`, a port can set the variable `PORTDOCS` to a list of file names and shell glob patterns to add to the final packing list. The names will be relative to `DOCSDIR`. Therefore, a port that utilizes `PORTDOCS` and uses a non-default location for its documentation should set `DOCSDIR` accordingly. If a directory is listed in `PORTDOCS` or matched by a glob pattern from this variable, the entire subtree of contained files and directories will be registered in the final packing list. If the `DOCS` option has been unset then files and directories listed in `PORTDOCS` would not be installed or added to port packing list. Installing the documentation at `PORTDOCS` as shown above remains up to the port itself. A typical example of utilizing `PORTDOCS` looks as follows:

```
PORTDOCS=      README.* ChangeLog docs/*
```

Note: The equivalents of `PORTDOCS` for files installed under `DATADIR` and `EXAMPLESDIR` are `PORTDATA` and `PORTEXAMPLES`, respectively.

You can also use the `pkg-message` file to display messages upon installation. See the section on using `pkg-message` for details. The `pkg-message` file does not need to be added to `pkg-plist`.

5.15.5 Subdirectories Under `PREFIX`

Try to let the port put things in the right subdirectories of `PREFIX`. Some ports lump everything and put it in the subdirectory with the port's name, which is incorrect. Also, many ports put everything except binaries, header files and manual pages in a subdirectory of `lib`, which does not work well with the BSD paradigm. Many of the files should be moved to one of the following: `etc` (setup/configuration files), `libexec` (executables started internally), `sbin` (executables for superusers/managers), `info` (documentation for info browser) or `share` (architecture independent files). See `hier(7)` for details; the rules governing `/usr` pretty much apply to `/usr/local` too. The exception are ports dealing with USENET “news”. They may use `PREFIX/news` as a destination for their files.

Chapter 6 Special Considerations

There are some more things you have to take into account when you create a port. This section explains the most common of those.

6.1 Shared Libraries

If your port installs one or more shared libraries, define a `USE_LDCONFIG` make variable, which will instruct a `bsd.port.mk` to run `${LDCONFIG} -m` on the directory where the new library is installed (usually `PREFIX/lib`) during `post-install` target to register it into the shared library cache. This variable, when defined, will also facilitate addition of an appropriate `@exec /sbin/ldconfig -m` and `@unexec /sbin/ldconfig -R` pair into your `pkg-plist` file, so that a user who installed the package can start using the shared library immediately and de-installation will not cause the system to still believe the library is there.

```
USE_LDCONFIG=    yes
```

If you need, you can override the default directory by setting the `USE_LDCONFIG` value to a list of directories into which shared libraries are to be installed. For example if your port installs shared libraries into `PREFIX/lib/foo` and `PREFIX/lib/bar` directories you could use the following in your Makefile:

```
USE_LDCONFIG=    ${PREFIX}/lib/foo ${PREFIX}/lib/bar
```

Please double-check, often this is not necessary at all or can be avoided through `-rpath` or setting `LD_RUN_PATH` during linking (see `lang/moscow_ml` for an example), or through a shell-wrapper which sets `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` before invoking the binary, like `www/seamoney` does.

When installing 32-bit libraries on 64-bit system, use `USE_LDCONFIG32` instead.

Try to keep shared library version numbers in the `libfoo.so.0` format. Our runtime linker only cares for the major (first) number.

When the major library version number increments in the update to the new port version, all other ports that link to the affected library should have their `PORTREVISION` incremented, to force recompilation with the new library version.

6.2 Ports with Distribution Restrictions

Licenses vary, and some of them place restrictions on how the application can be packaged, whether it can be sold for profit, and so on.

Important: It is your responsibility as a porter to read the licensing terms of the software and make sure that the FreeBSD project will not be held accountable for violating them by redistributing the source or compiled binaries either via FTP/HTTP or CD-ROM. If in doubt, please contact the FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>).

In situations like this, the variables described in the following sections can be set.

6.2.1 NO_PACKAGE

This variable indicates that we may not generate a binary package of the application. For instance, the license may disallow binary redistribution, or it may prohibit distribution of packages created from patched sources.

However, the port's `DISTFILES` may be freely mirrored on FTP/HTTP. They may also be distributed on a CD-ROM (or similar media) unless `NO_CDROM` is set as well.

`NO_PACKAGE` should also be used if the binary package is not generally useful, and the application should always be compiled from the source code. For example, if the application has configuration information that is site specific hard coded in to it at compile time, set `NO_PACKAGE`.

`NO_PACKAGE` should be set to a string describing the reason why the package should not be generated.

6.2.2 NO_CDROM

This variable alone indicates that, although we are allowed to generate binary packages, we may put neither those packages nor the port's `DISTFILES` onto a CD-ROM (or similar media) for resale. However, the binary packages and the port's `DISTFILES` will still be available via FTP/HTTP.

If this variable is set along with `NO_PACKAGE`, then only the port's `DISTFILES` will be available, and only via FTP/HTTP.

`NO_CDROM` should be set to a string describing the reason why the port cannot be redistributed on CD-ROM. For instance, this should be used if the port's license is for "non-commercial" use only.

6.2.3 NOFETCHFILES

Files defined in the `NOFETCHFILES` variable are not fetchable from any of the `MASTER_SITES`. An example of such a file is when the file is supplied on CD-ROM by the vendor.

Tools which check for the availability of these files on the `MASTER_SITES` should ignore these files and not report about them.

6.2.4 RESTRICTED

Set this variable alone if the application's license permits neither mirroring the application's `DISTFILES` nor distributing the binary package in any way.

`NO_CDROM` or `NO_PACKAGE` should not be set along with `RESTRICTED` since the latter variable implies the former ones.

`RESTRICTED` should be set to a string describing the reason why the port cannot be redistributed. Typically, this indicates that the port contains proprietary software and that the user will need to manually download the `DISTFILES`, possibly after registering for the software or agreeing to accept the terms of an EULA.

6.2.5 RESTRICTED_FILES

When `RESTRICTED` or `NO_CDROM` is set, this variable defaults to `${DISTFILES} ${PATCHFILES}`, otherwise it is empty. If only some of the distribution files are restricted, then set this variable to list them.

Note that the port committer should add an entry to `/usr/ports/LEGAL` for every listed distribution file, describing exactly what the restriction entails.

6.2.6 Examples

The preferred way to state "the distfiles for this port must be fetched manually" is as follows:

```
.if !exists(${DISTDIR}/${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFFIX})
IGNORE=          may not be redistributed because of licensing reasons. Please visit some-website to ac
.endif
```

This both informs the user, and sets the proper metadata on the user's machine for use by automated programs.

Note that this stanza must be preceded by an inclusion of `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

6.3 Building Mechanisms

6.3.1 Building Ports in Parallel

The FreeBSD ports framework supports parallel building using multiple `make` sub-processes, which allows SMP systems to utilize all of their available CPU power, allowing port builds to be faster and more effective.

This is achieved by passing `-jX` flag to `make(1)` running on vendor code. Unfortunately, not all ports handle parallel building well. Therefore it is required to explicitly enable this feature by adding `MAKE_JOBS_SAFE=yes` somewhere below the dependency declaration section of the `Makefile`.

Another option for controlling this feature from the maintainer's point of view is the `MAKE_JOBS_UNSAFE=yes` variable. It is used when a port is known to be broken with `-jX` and a user forces the use of multi processor compilations for all ports in `/etc/make.conf` with the `FORCE_MAKE_JOBS=yes` variable.

6.3.2 `make`, `gmake`, and `imake`

If your port uses **GNU make**, set `USE_GMAKE=yes`.

Table 6-1. Variables for Ports Related to `gmake`

Variable	Means
<code>USE_GMAKE</code>	The port requires <code>gmake</code> to build.
<code>GMAKE</code>	The full path for <code>gmake</code> if it is not in the <code>PATH</code> .

If your port is an X application that creates `Makefile` files from `Imakefile` files using **`imake`**, then set `USE_IMAKE=yes`. This will cause the configure stage to automatically do an `xmkmf -a`. If the `-a` flag is a problem for your port, set `XMKMF=xmkmf`. If the port uses **`imake`** but does not understand the `install.man` target, `NO_INSTALL_MANPAGES=yes` should be set.

If your port's source `Makefile` has something else than `all` as the main build target, set `ALL_TARGET` accordingly. Same goes for `install` and `INSTALL_TARGET`.

6.3.3 configure Script

If your port uses the `configure` script to generate Makefile files from `Makefile.in` files, set `GNU_CONFIGURE=yes`. If you want to give extra arguments to the `configure` script (the default argument is `--prefix=${PREFIX} --infodir=${PREFIX}/${INFO_PATH} --mandir=${MANPREFIX}/man --build=${CONFIGURE_TARGET}`), set those extra arguments in `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. Extra environment variables can be passed using `CONFIGURE_ENV` variable.

Table 6-2. Variables for Ports That Use `configure`

Variable	Means
<code>GNU_CONFIGURE</code>	The port uses <code>configure</code> script to prepare build.
<code>HAS_CONFIGURE</code>	Same as <code>GNU_CONFIGURE</code> , except default configure target is not added to <code>CONFIGURE_ARGS</code> .
<code>CONFIGURE_ARGS</code>	Additional arguments passed to <code>configure</code> script.
<code>CONFIGURE_ENV</code>	Additional environment variables to be set for <code>configure</code> script run.
<code>CONFIGURE_TARGET</code>	Override default configure target. Default value is <code>\${MACHINE_ARCH}-portbld-freebsd\${OSREL}</code> .

6.3.4 Using `cmake`

For ports that use **CMake**, define `USES= cmake`, or `USES= cmake:outsource` to build in a separate directory (see below).

Table 6-3. Variables for Ports That Use `cmake`

Variable	Means
<code>CMAKE_ARGS</code>	Port specific CMake flags to be passed to the <code>cmake</code> binary.
<code>CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE</code>	Type of build (CMake predefined build profiles). Default is <code>Release</code> , or <code>Debug</code> if <code>WITH_DEBUG</code> is set.
<code>CMAKE_ENV</code>	Environment variables to be set for <code>cmake</code> binary. Default is <code>\${CONFIGURE_ENV}</code> .
<code>CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH</code>	Path to the source directory. Default is <code>\${WRKSRC}</code> .

CMake supports the following build profiles: `Debug`, `Release`, `RelWithDebInfo` and `MinSizeRel`. `Debug` and `Release` profiles respect system `*FLAGS`, `RelWithDebInfo` and `MinSizeRel` will set `CFLAGS` to `-O2 -g` and `-Os -DNDEBUG` correspondingly. The lower-cased value of `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` is exported to the `PLIST_SUB` and should be used if port installs `*.cmake` files depending on the build type (see `deskutils/strigi` for an example). Please note that some projects may define their own build profiles and/or force particular build type by setting `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` in `CMakeLists.txt` files. In order to make a port for such a project respect `CFLAGS` and `WITH_DEBUG`, the `CMAKE_BUILD_TYPE` definitions must be removed from those files.

Most **CMake**-based projects support an out-of-source method of building. The out-of-source build for a port can be requested by using the `:outsource` suffix. When enabled, `CONFIGURE_WRKSRC`, `BUILD_WRKSRC` and `INSTALL_WRKSRC` will be set to `${WRKDIR}/.build` and this directory will be used to keep all files generated

during configuration and build stages, leaving the source directory intact.

Example 6-1. `USES= cmake` Example

The following snippet demonstrates the use of **CMake** for a port. `CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH` is not usually required, but can be set when the sources are not located in the top directory, or if only a subset of the project is intended to be built by the port.

```
USES=                cmake:outsource
CMAKE_SOURCE_PATH=   ${WRKSRCTOP}/subproject
```

6.3.5 Using `scons`

If your port uses **SCons**, define `USE_SCONS=yes`.

Table 6-4. Variables for Ports That Use `scons`

Variable	Means
<code>SCONS_ARGS</code>	Port specific SCons flags passed to the SCons environment.
<code>SCONS_BUILDENV</code>	Variables to be set in system environment.
<code>SCONS_ENV</code>	Variables to be set in SCons environment.
<code>SCONS_TARGET</code>	Last argument passed to SCons, similar to <code>MAKE_TARGET</code> .

To make third party `SConstruct` respect everything that is passed to SCons in `SCONS_ENV` (that is, most importantly, `CC/CXX/CFLAGS/CXXFLAGS`), patch the `SConstruct` so build Environment is constructed like this:

```
env = Environment(**ARGUMENTS)
```

It may be then modified with `env.Append` and `env.Replace`.

6.4 Using GNU Autotools

6.4.1 Introduction

The various GNU autotools provide an abstraction mechanism for building a piece of software over a wide variety of operating systems and machine architectures. Within the Ports Collection, an individual port can make use of these tools via a simple construct:

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS=  tool:version[:operation] ...
```

At the time of writing, `tool` can be one of `libtool`, `libltdl`, `autoconf`, `autoheader`, `automake` or `aclocal`.

`version` specifies the particular tool revision to be used (see `devel/{automake, autoconf, libtool}[0-9]+` for valid versions).

operation is an optional extension to modify how the tool is used.

Multiple tools can be specified at once, either by including them all on a single line, or using the += Makefile construct.

Finally, there is the special tool, called `autotools`, which is a convenience function to bring in all available versions of the autotools to allow for cross-development work. This can also be accomplished by installing the `devel/autotools` port.

6.4.2 libtool

Shared libraries using the GNU building framework usually use `libtool` to adjust the compilation and installation of shared libraries to match the specifics of the underlying operating system. The usual practice is to use copy of `libtool` bundled with the application. In case you need to use external `libtool`, you can use the version provided by The Ports Collection:

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= libtool:version[:env]
```

With no additional operations, `libtool:version` tells the building framework to patch the configure script with the system-installed copy of `libtool`. The `GNU_CONFIGURE` is implied. Further, a number of make and shell variables will be assigned for onward use by the port. See `bsd.autotools.mk` for details.

With the `:env` operation, only the environment will be set up.

Finally, `LIBTOOLFLAGS` and `LIBTOOLFILES` can be optionally set to override the most likely arguments to, and files patched by, `libtool`. Most ports are unlikely to need this. See `bsd.autotools.mk` for further details.

6.4.3 libltdl

Some ports make use of the `libltdl` library package, which is part of the `libtool` suite. Use of this library does not automatically necessitate the use of `libtool` itself, so a separate construct is provided.

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= libltdl:version
```

Currently, all this does is to bring in a `LIB_DEPENDS` on the appropriate `libltdl` port, and is provided as a convenience function to help eliminate any dependencies on the autotools ports outside of the `USE_AUTOTOOLS` framework. There are no optional operations for this tool.

6.4.4 autoconf and autoheader

Some ports do not contain a configure script, but do contain an autoconf template in the `configure.ac` file. You can use the following assignments to let `autoconf` create the configure script, and also have `autoheader` create template headers for use by the configure script.

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= autoconf:version[:env]
```

and

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= autoheader:version
```

which also implies the use of `autoconf:version`.

Similarly to `libtool`, the inclusion of the optional `:env` operation simply sets up the environment for further use. Without it, patching and reconfiguration of the port is carried out.

The additional optional variables `AUTOCONF_ARGS` and `AUTOHEADER_ARGS` can be overridden by the port `Makefile` if specifically requested. As with the `libtool` equivalents, most ports are unlikely to need this.

6.4.5 automake and aclocal

Some packages only contain `Makefile.am` files. These have to be converted into `Makefile.in` files using `automake`, and the further processed by `configure` to generate an actual `Makefile`.

Similarly, packages occasionally do not ship with included `aclocal.m4` files, again required to build the software. This can be achieved with `aclocal`, which scans `configure.ac` or `configure.in`.

`aclocal` has a similar relationship to `automake` as `autoheader` does to `autoconf`, described in the previous section. `aclocal` implies the use of `automake`, thus we have:

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= automake:version[:env]
```

and

```
USE_AUTOTOOLS= aclocal:version
```

which also implies the use of `automake:version`.

Similarly to `libtool` and `autoconf`, the inclusion of the optional `:env` operation simply sets up the environment for further use. Without it, reconfiguration of the port is carried out.

As with `autoconf` and `autoheader`, both `automake` and `aclocal` have optional argument variables, `AUTOMAKE_ARGS` and `ACLOCAL_ARGS` respectively, which may be overridden by the port `Makefile` if required.

6.5 Using pkg-config

If your ports requires `pkg-config`, just set `USE_PKGCONFIG` to the following possible values:

Table 6-5. Values for `USE_PKGCONFIG`

Definition	Description
<code>USE_PKGCONFIG= yes</code>	The ports uses <code>pkg-config</code> only at build time
<code>USE_PKGCONFIG= build</code>	The ports uses <code>pkg-config</code> only at build time
<code>USE_PKGCONFIG= run</code>	The ports uses <code>pkg-config</code> only at run time
<code>USE_PKGCONFIG= both</code>	The ports uses <code>pkg-config</code> both at build and run time

6.6 Using GNU `gettext`

6.6.1 Basic Usage

If your port requires `gettext`, just set `USE_GETTEXT` to `yes`, and your port will grow the dependency on `devel/gettext`. The value of `USE_GETTEXT` can also specify the required version of the `libintl` library, the basic part of `gettext`, but using this feature is *strongly discouraged*: Your port should work with just the current version of `devel/gettext`.

A rather common case is a port using `gettext` and `configure`. Generally, GNU `configure` should be able to locate `gettext` automatically. If it ever fails to, hints at the location of `gettext` can be passed in `CPPFLAGS` and `LDFLAGS` as follows:

```
USE_GETTEXT=      yes
CPPFLAGS+=        -I${LOCALBASE}/include
LDFLAGS+=         -L${LOCALBASE}/lib
```

```
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
```

Of course, the code can be more compact if there are no more flags to pass to `configure`:

```
USE_GETTEXT=      yes
GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
```

6.6.2 Optional Usage

Some software products allow for disabling NLS, e.g., through passing `--disable-nls` to `configure`. In that case, your port should use `gettext` conditionally, depending on the status of `WITHOUT-NLS`. For ports of low to medium complexity, you can rely on the following idiom:

```
GNU_CONFIGURE=      yes

.include <bsd.port.options.mk>

.if ${PORT_OPTIONS:MNLS}
USE_GETTEXT=        yes
PLIST_SUB+=         NLS=" "
.else
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=    --disable-nls
PLIST_SUB+=         NLS="@comment "
.endif

.include <bsd.port.mk>
```

The next item on your to-do list is to arrange so that the message catalog files are included in the packing list conditionally. The `Makefile` part of this task is already provided by the idiom. It is explained in the section on advanced `pkg-plist` practices. In a nutshell, each occurrence of `%%NLS%%` in `pkg-plist` will be replaced by `"@comment "` if NLS is disabled, or by a null string if NLS is enabled. Consequently, the lines prefixed by `%%NLS%%` will become mere comments in the final packing list if NLS is off; otherwise the prefix will be just left out. All you need to do now is insert `%%NLS%%` before each path to a message catalog file in `pkg-plist`. For example:

```
%%NLS%%share/locale/fr/LC_MESSAGES/foobar.mo
%%NLS%%share/locale/no/LC_MESSAGES/foobar.mo
```

In high complexity cases, you may need to use more advanced techniques than the recipe given here, such as dynamic packing list generation.

6.6.3 Handling Message Catalog Directories

There is a point to note about installing message catalog files. The target directories for them, which reside under `LOCALBASE/share/locale`, should rarely be created and removed by a port. The most popular languages have their respective directories listed in `PORTSDIR/Templates/BSD.local.dist`. The directories for many other languages are governed by the `devel/gettext` port. Consult its `pkg-plist` and see whether the port is going to install a message catalog file for a unique language.

6.7 Using Perl

If `MASTER_SITES` is set to `MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN`, then the preferred value of `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` is the top-level hierarchy name. For example, the recommended value for `p5-Module-Name` is `Module`. The top-level hierarchy can be examined at `cpan.org` (<http://cpan.org/modules/by-module/>). This keeps the port working when the author of the module changes.

The exception to this rule is when the relevant directory does not exist or the distfile does not exist in that directory. In such case, using author's id as `MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR` is allowed.

All of the tunable knobs below accept either `YES` or a version string like `5.8.0+`. `YES` means that the port can be used with any of the supported Perl versions. If a port only works with specific versions of Perl, it can be indicated with a version string, specifying a minimum version (e.g., `5.7.3+`), a maximum version (e.g., `5.8.0-`) or an exact version (e.g., `5.8.3`).

Table 6-6. Variables for Ports That Use Perl

Variable	Meaning
<code>USE_PERL5</code>	The port uses Perl 5 to build and run.
<code>USE_PERL5_BUILD</code>	The port uses Perl 5 to build.
<code>USE_PERL5_RUN</code>	The port uses Perl 5 to run.
<code>PERL</code>	The full path of the Perl 5 interpreter, either in the system or installed from a port, but without the version number. Use this if you need to replace “#!” lines in scripts.
<code>PERL_CONFIGURE</code>	Configure using Perl's MakeMaker. It implies <code>USE_PERL5</code> .
<code>PERL_MDBUILD</code>	Configure, build and install using <code>Module::Build</code> . It implies <code>PERL_CONFIGURE</code> .
Read only variables	
<code>PERL_VERSION</code>	The full version of Perl installed (e.g., <code>5.8.9</code>).
<code>PERL_LEVEL</code>	The installed Perl version as an integer of the form <code>MNNPP</code> (e.g., <code>500809</code>).

Read only variables

PERL_ARCH	Where Perl stores architecture dependent libraries. Defaults to <code>\${ARCH}-freebsd</code> .
PERL_PORT	Name of the Perl port that is installed (e.g., <code>perl5</code>).
SITE_PERL	Directory name where site specific Perl packages go. This value is added to <code>PLIST_SUB</code> .

Note: Ports of Perl modules which do not have an official website should link to `cpan.org` in the `WWW` line of `pkg-descr`. The preferred URL form is `http://search.cpan.org/dist/Module-Name/` (including the trailing slash).

Note: Do not use `${SITE_PERL}` in dependency declarations. Doing so assumes that `bsd.perl.mk` has been included, which is not always true. Ports depending on this port will have incorrect dependencies if this port's files move later in an upgrade. The right way to declare Perl module dependencies is shown in the example below.

Example 6-2. Perl Dependency Example

```
p5-IO-Tee>=0.64:${PORTSDIR}/devel/p5-IO-Tee
```

6.8 Using X11

6.8.1 X.Org Components

The X11 implementation available in The Ports Collection is X.Org. If your application depends on X components, set `USE_XORG` to the list of required components. Available components, at the time of writing, are:

```
bigreqsproto compositeproto damageproto dmx dmxproto dri2proto evieproto fixesproto
fontcacheproto fontenc fontsproto fontutil glproto ice inputproto kbproto libfs oldx
pciaccess pixman printproto randrproto recordproto renderproto resourceproto
scrnsaverproto sm trapproto videoproto x11 xau xaw xaw6 xaw7 xbitmaps xcmiscproto
xcomposite xcursor xdamage xdmcp xevie xext xextproto xf86bigfontproto xf86dgaproto
xf86driproto xf86miscproto xf86rushproto xf86vidmodeproto xfixes xfont xfontcache xft
xi xinerama xineramaproto xkbfile xkbui xmu xmuu xorg-server xp xpm xprintapputil
xprintutil xproto xproxymngproto xrandr xrender xres xscrnsaver xt xtrans xtrap xtst
xv xvmc xxf86dga xxf86misc xxf86vm.
```

Always up-to-date list can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.xorg.mk`.

The Mesa Project is an effort to provide free OpenGL implementation. You can specify a dependency on various components of this project with `USE_GL` variable. Valid options are: `glut`, `glu`, `glw`, `glew`, `gl` and `linux`. For backwards compatibility, the value of `yes` maps to `glu`.

Example 6-3. USE_XORG Example

```
USE_XORG=      xrender xft xkbfile xt xaw
USE_GL=        glu
```

Some ports define `USE_XLIB`, which makes the port depend on all the 50 or so libraries. This variable exists for backwards compatibility, as it predates modular X.Org, and should not be used on new ports.

Table 6-7. Variables for Ports That Use X

<code>USE_XLIB</code>	The port uses the X libraries. Deprecated - use a list of X.Org components in <code>USE_XORG</code> variable instead.
<code>USE_IMAKE</code>	The port uses <code>imake</code> .
<code>XMKMF</code>	Set to the path of <code>xmkmf</code> if not in the <code>PATH</code> . Defaults to <code>xmkmf -a</code> .

Table 6-8. Variables for Depending on Individual Parts of X11

<code>X_IMAKE_PORT</code>	Port providing <code>imake</code> and several other utilities used to build X11.
<code>X_LIBRARIES_PORT</code>	Port providing X11 libraries.
<code>X_CLIENTS_PORT</code>	Port providing X clients.
<code>X_SERVER_PORT</code>	Port providing X server.
<code>X_FONTSERVER_PORT</code>	Port providing font server.
<code>X_PRINTSERVER_PORT</code>	Port providing print server.
<code>X_VFBSERVER_PORT</code>	Port providing virtual framebuffer server.
<code>X_NESTSERVER_PORT</code>	Port providing a nested X server.
<code>X_FONTS_ENCODINGS_PORT</code>	Port providing encodings for fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_MISC_PORT</code>	Port providing miscellaneous bitmap fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_100DPI_PORT</code>	Port providing 100dpi bitmap fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_75DPI_PORT</code>	Port providing 75dpi bitmap fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_CYRILLIC_PORT</code>	Port providing cyrillic bitmap fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_TTF_PORT</code>	Port providing TrueType® fonts.
<code>X_FONTS_TYPE1_PORT</code>	Port providing Type1 fonts.
<code>X_MANUALS_PORT</code>	Port providing developer oriented manual pages

Example 6-4. Using X11-Related Variables

```
# Use some X11 libraries and depend on
# font server as well as cyrillic fonts.
RUN_DEPENDS=  ${LOCALBASE}/bin/xfs:${X_FONTSERVER_PORT} \
               ${LOCALBASE}/lib/X11/fonts/cyrillic/croxc.cpcf.gz:${X_FONTS_CYRILLIC_PORT}

USE_XORG=      x11 xpm
```

6.8.2 Ports That Require Motif

If your port requires a Motif library, define `USE_MOTIF` in the `Makefile`. Default Motif implementation is `x11-toolkits/open-motif`. Users can choose `x11-toolkits/lesstif` instead by setting `WANT_LESSTIF` variable.

The `MOTIFLIB` variable will be set by `bsd.port.mk` to reference the appropriate Motif library. Please patch the source of your port to use `${MOTIFLIB}` wherever the Motif library is referenced in the original `Makefile` or `Imakefile`.

There are two common cases:

- If the port refers to the Motif library as `-lXm` in its `Makefile` or `Imakefile`, simply substitute `${MOTIFLIB}` for it.
- If the port uses `XmClientLibs` in its `Imakefile`, change it to `${MOTIFLIB} ${XTOOLLIB} ${XLIB}`.

Note that `MOTIFLIB` (usually) expands to `-L/usr/local/lib -lXm` or `/usr/local/lib/libXm.a`, so there is no need to add `-L` or `-l` in front.

6.8.3 X11 Fonts

If your port installs fonts for the X Window System, put them in `LOCALBASE/lib/X11/fonts/local`.

6.8.4 Getting a Fake `DISPLAY` with `Xvfb`

Some applications require a working X11 display for compilation to succeed. This poses a problem for machines that operate headless. When the following variable is used, the build infrastructure will start the virtual framebuffer X server. The working `DISPLAY` is then passed to the build.

```
USE_DISPLAY=    yes
```

6.8.5 Desktop Entries

Desktop entries (a freedesktop standard (<http://standards.freedesktop.org/desktop-entry-spec/latest/>)) provide a way to automatically adjust desktop features when a new program is installed, without requiring user intervention. For example, newly-installed programs automatically appear in the application menus of compatible desktop environments. Desktop entries originated in the **GNOME** desktop environment, but are now a standard and also work with **KDE** and **Xfce**. This bit of automation provides a real benefit to the user, and desktop entries are encouraged for applications which can be used in a desktop environment.

6.8.5.1 Using Predefined `.desktop` Files

Ports that include predefined `*.desktop` files should include those files in `pkg-plist` and install them in the `$LOCALBASE/share/applications` directory. The `INSTALL_DATA` macro is useful for installing these files.

6.8.5.2 Creating Desktop Entries with the `DESKTOP_ENTRIES` Macro

Desktop entries can be easily created for applications by using the `DESKTOP_ENTRIES` variable. A file named `name.desktop` will be created, installed, and added to the `pkg-plist` automatically. Syntax is:

```
DESKTOP_ENTRIES="NAME" "COMMENT" "ICON" "COMMAND" "CATEGORY" StartupNotify
```

The list of possible categories is available on the Freedesktop website (<http://standards.freedesktop.org/menu-spec/latest/apa.html>). `StartupNotify` indicates whether the application is compatible with *startup notifications*. These are typically a graphic indicator like a clock that appear at the mouse pointer, menu, or panel to give the user an indication when a program is starting. A program that is compatible with startup notifications clears the indicator after it has started. Programs that are not compatible with startup notifications would never clear the indicator (potentially confusing and infuriating the user), and should have `StartupNotify` set to `false` so the indicator is not shown at all.

Example:

```
DESKTOP_ENTRIES="ToME" "Roguelike game based on JRR Tolkien's work" \
"${DATADIR}/xtra/graf/tome-128.png" \
"tome -v -g" "Application;Game;RolePlaying;" \
false
```

6.9 Using GNOME

The FreeBSD/GNOME project uses its own set of variables to define which GNOME components a particular port uses. A comprehensive list of these variables (<http://www.FreeBSD.org/gnome/docs/porting.html>) exists within the FreeBSD/GNOME project's homepage.

6.10 Using Qt

6.10.1 Ports That Require Qt

Table 6-9. Variables for Ports That Use Qt

<code>USE_QT_VER</code>	The port uses the Qt toolkit. The only possible value is 3. Appropriate parameters are passed to <code>configure</code> script and <code>make</code> .
<code>USE_QT4</code>	Specify tool and library dependencies for ports that use Qt 4. See Qt 4 component selection for more details.
<code>QT_PREFIX</code>	Set to the path where Qt installed to (read-only variable).
<code>MOC</code>	Set to the path of <code>moc</code> (read-only variable). Default set according to <code>USE_QT_VER</code> value.

QTCPPFLAGS	Additional compiler flags passed via <code>CONFIGURE_ENV</code> for Qt toolkit. Default set according to <code>USE_QT_VER</code> .
QTCFGLIBS	Additional libraries for linking passed via <code>CONFIGURE_ENV</code> for Qt toolkit. Default set according to <code>USE_QT_VER</code> .
QTNONSTANDARD	Suppress modification of <code>CONFIGURE_ENV</code> , <code>CONFIGURE_ARGS</code> , <code>CPPFLAGS</code> and <code>MAKE_ENV</code> .

Table 6-10. Additional Variables for Ports That Use Qt 4.x

UIC	Set to the path of <code>uic</code> (read-only variable).
QMAKE	Set to the path of <code>qmake</code> (read-only variable).
QMAKESPEC	Set to the path of configuration file for <code>qmake</code> (read-only variable).
QMAKEFLAGS	Additional flags for <code>qmake</code> .
QT_INCDIR	Set to Qt 4 include directories (read-only variable).
QT_LIBDIR	Set to Qt 4 libraries path (read-only variable).
QT_PLUGINDIR	Set to Qt 4 plugins path (read-only variable).

When `USE_QT_VER` is set to 3, some useful settings are passed to the `configure` script:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=      --with-qt-includes=${QT_PREFIX}/include \
                      --with-qt-libraries=${QT_PREFIX}/lib \
                      --with-extra-libs=${LOCALBASE}/lib \
                      --with-extra-includes=${LOCALBASE}/include
CONFIGURE_ENV+=       MOC="${MOC}" LIBS="${QTCFGLIBS}" \
                      QTDIR="${QT_PREFIX}" KDEDIR="${KDE_PREFIX}"
CPPFLAGS+=           ${QTCPPFLAGS}
```

If `USE_QT4` is set, the following settings are deployed:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=      --with-qt-includes=${QT_INCDIR} \
                      --with-qt-libraries=${QT_LIBDIR} \
                      --with-extra-libs=${LOCALBASE}/lib \
                      --with-extra-includes=${LOCALBASE}/include
CONFIGURE_ENV+=       MOC="${MOC}" UIC="${UIC}" LIBS="${QTCFGLIBS}" \
                      QMAKE="${QMAKE}" QMAKESPEC="${QMAKESPEC}" QTDIR="${QT_PREFIX}"
MAKE_ENV+=           QMAKESPEC="${QMAKESPEC}"

PLIST_SUB+=          QT_INCDIR_REL=${QT_INCDIR_REL} \
                      QT_LIBDIR_REL=${QT_LIBDIR_REL} \
                      QT_PLUGINDIR_REL=${QT_PLUGINDIR_REL}
```

6.10.2 Component Selection (Qt 4.x Only)

Individual Qt 4 tool and library dependencies must be specified in the `USE_QT4` variable. Every component can be suffixed by either `_build` or `_run`, the suffix indicating whether the component should be depended on at buildtime or runtime, respectively. If unsuffixed, the component will be depended on at both build- and runtime. Usually, library components should be specified unsuffixed, tool components should be specified with the `_build` suffix and plugin components should be specified with the `_run` suffix. The most commonly used components are listed below (all available components are listed in `_USE_QT4_ALL` in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.qt.mk`):

Table 6-11. Available Qt 4 Library Components

Name	Description
<code>corelib</code>	core library (can be omitted unless the port uses nothing but <code>corelib</code>)
<code>gui</code>	graphical user interface library
<code>network</code>	network library
<code>opengl</code>	OpenGL library
<code>qt3support</code>	Qt 3 compatibility library
<code>qtestlib</code>	unit testing library
<code>script</code>	script library
<code>sql</code>	SQL library
<code>xml</code>	XML library

You can determine which libraries the application depends on, by running `ldd` on the main executable after a successful compilation.

Table 6-12. Available Qt 4 Tool Components

Name	Description
<code>moc</code>	meta object compiler (needed for almost every Qt application at buildtime)
<code>qmake</code>	Makefile generator / build utility
<code>rcc</code>	resource compiler (needed if the application comes with <code>*.rc</code> or <code>*.qrc</code> files)
<code>uic</code>	user interface compiler (needed if the application comes with <code>*.ui</code> files created by Qt Designer - in practice, every Qt application with a GUI)

Table 6-13. Available Qt 4 Plugin Components

Name	Description
<code>iconengines</code>	SVG icon engine plugin (if the application ships SVG icons)
<code>imageformats</code>	imageformat plugins for GIF, JPEG, MNG and SVG (if the application ships image files)

Example 6-5. Selecting Qt 4 Components

In this example, the ported application uses the Qt 4 graphical user interface library, the Qt 4 core library, all of the Qt 4 code generation tools and Qt 4's Makefile generator. Since the `gui` library implies a dependency on the core library, `corelib` does not need to be specified. The Qt 4 code generation tools `moc`, `uic` and `rcc`, as well as the Makefile generator `qmake` are only needed at buildtime, thus they are specified with the `_build` suffix:

```
USE_QT4=      gui moc_build qmake_build rcc_build uic_build
```

6.10.3 Additional Considerations

If the application does not provide a `configure` file but a `.pro` file, you can use the following:

```
HAS_CONFIGURE= yes
```

```
do-configure:
    @cd ${WRKSRCSRC} && ${SETENV} ${CONFIGURE_ENV} \
        ${QMAKE} ${QMAKEFLAGS} PREFIX=${PREFIX} texmaker.pro
```

Note the similarity to the `qmake` line from the provided `BUILD.sh` script. Passing `CONFIGURE_ENV` ensures `qmake` will see the `QMAKESPEC` variable, without which it cannot work. `qmake` generates standard Makefiles, so it is not necessary to write our own build target.

Qt applications often are written to be cross-platform and often X11/Unix is not the platform they are developed on, which in turn often leads to certain loose ends, like:

- *Missing additional include paths.* Many applications come with system tray icon support, but neglect to look for includes and/or libraries in the X11 directories. You can tell `qmake` to add directories to the include and library search paths via the command line, for example:

```
${QMAKE} ${QMAKEFLAGS} PREFIX=${PREFIX} INCLUDEPATH+=${LOCALBASE}/include \
    LIBS+=-L${LOCALBASE}/lib sillyapp.pro
```

- *Bogus installation paths.* Sometimes data such as icons or `.desktop` files are by default installed into directories which are not scanned by XDG-compatible applications. `editors/texmaker` is an example for this - look at `patch-texmaker.pro` in the `files` directory of that port for a template on how to remedy this directly in the `qmake` project file.

6.11 Using KDE**6.11.1 Variable Definitions (KDE 3.x Only)**

Table 6-14. Variables for Ports That Use KDE 3.x

```
USE_KDELIBS_VER
```

The port uses KDE libraries. It specifies the major version of KDE to use and implies `USE_QT_VER` of the appropriate version. The only possible value is 3.

USE_KDEBASE_VER

The port uses KDE base. It specifies the major version of KDE to use and implies `USE_QT_VER` of the appropriate version. The only possible value is 3.

6.11.2 KDE 4 Variable Definitions

If your application depends on KDE 4.x, set `USE_KDE4` to the list of required components. `_build` and `_run` suffixes can be used to force components dependency type (e.g., `baseapps_run`). If no suffix is set, a default dependency type will be used. If you want to force both types, add the component twice with both suffixes (e.g., `automoc4_build automoc4_run`). The most commonly used components are listed below (up-to-date components are documented at the top of `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.kde4.mk`):

Table 6-15. Available KDE 4 Components

Name	Description
kdehier	Hierarchy of common KDE directories
kdelibs	KDE Developer Platform
kdeprefix	If set, port will be installed into <code>\${KDE4_PREFIX}</code> instead of <code>\${LOCALBASE}</code>
sharedmime	MIME types database for KDE ports
automoc4	Automatic moc for Qt 4 packages
akonadi	Storage server for KDE-Pim
soprano	Qt 4 RDF framework
strigi	Desktop search daemon
libkcddb	KDE CDDb library
libkcompactdisc	KDE library for interfacing with audio CDs
libkdeedu	Libraries used by educational applications
libkdcraw	KDE LibRaw library
libkexiv2	KDE Exiv2 library
libkipi	KDE Image Plugin Interface
libkonq	Konqueror core library
libksane	KDE SANE ("Scanner Access Now Easy") library
pimlibs	KDE-Pim libraries
kate	Text editor framework
marble	Virtual globe
okular	Universal document viewer
korundum	KDE Ruby bindings
perlkde	KDE Perl bindings
pykde4	KDE Python bindings
pykdeuic4	PyKDE user interface compiler
smokekde	KDE SMOKE libraries

KDE 4.x ports are installed into `KDE4_PREFIX`, which is `/usr/local/kde4` currently, to avoid conflicts with KDE 3.x ports. This is achieved by specifying the `kdeprefix` component, which overrides the default `PREFIX`. The ports however respect any `PREFIX` set via `MAKEFLAGS` environment variable and/or `make` arguments.

Example 6-6. `USE_KDE4` Example

This is a simple example for a KDE 4 port. `USES= cmake:outsources` instructs the port to utilize **CMake**, a configuration tool widely used by KDE 4 projects (see Section 6.3.4 for detailed usage). `USE_KDE4` brings dependency on KDE libraries and makes port using `automoc4` at build stage. Required KDE components and other dependencies can be determined through `configure log`. `USE_KDE4` does not imply `USE_QT4`. If a port requires some Qt 4 components, they should be specified in `USE_QT4`.

```
USES=          cmake:outsources
USE_KDE4=      kdelibs kdeprefix automoc4
USE_QT4=       moc_build qmake_build rcc_build uic_build
```

6.12 Using Java

6.12.1 Variable Definitions

If your port needs a Java™ Development Kit (JDK™) to either build, run or even extract the distfile, then it should define `USE_JAVA`.

There are several JDKs in the ports collection, from various vendors, and in several versions. If your port must use one of these versions, you can define which one. The most current version is `java/jdk16`.

Table 6-16. Variables Which May be Set by Ports That Use Java

Variable	Means
<code>USE_JAVA</code>	Should be defined for the remaining variables to have any effect.
<code>JAVA_VERSION</code>	List of space-separated suitable Java versions for the port. An optional "+" allows you to specify a range of versions (allowed values: <code>1.5[+]</code> <code>1.6[+]</code> <code>1.7[+]</code>).
<code>JAVA_OS</code>	List of space-separated suitable JDK port operating systems for the port (allowed values: <code>native</code> <code>linux</code>).
<code>JAVA_VENDOR</code>	List of space-separated suitable JDK port vendors for the port (allowed values: <code>freebsd</code> <code>bsdjava</code> <code>sun</code> <code>openjdk</code>).
<code>JAVA_BUILD</code>	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the build dependencies of the port.
<code>JAVA_RUN</code>	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the run dependencies of the port.
<code>JAVA_EXTRACT</code>	When set, it means that the selected JDK port should be added to the extract dependencies of the port.

Below is the list of all settings a port will receive after setting `USE_JAVA`:

Table 6-17. Variables Provided to Ports That Use Java

Variable	Value
<code>JAVA_PORT</code>	The name of the JDK port (e.g., <code>'java/openjdk6'</code>).
<code>JAVA_PORT_VERSION</code>	The full version of the JDK port (e.g., <code>'1.6.0'</code>). If you only need the first two digits of this version number, use <code>\${JAVA_PORT_VERSION:C/^\([0-9]\)\.([0-9])(.*)\$/\1.\2/}</code> .
<code>JAVA_PORT_OS</code>	The operating system used by the JDK port (e.g., <code>'native'</code>).
<code>JAVA_PORT_VENDOR</code>	The vendor of the JDK port (e.g., <code>'openjdk'</code>).
<code>JAVA_PORT_OS_DESCRIPTION</code>	Description of the operating system used by the JDK port (e.g., <code>'Native'</code>).
<code>JAVA_PORT_VENDOR_DESCRIPTION</code>	Description of the vendor of the JDK port (e.g., <code>'OpenJDK BSD Porting Team'</code>).
<code>JAVA_HOME</code>	Path to the installation directory of the JDK (e.g., <code>'/usr/local/openjdk6'</code>).
<code>JAVAC</code>	Path to the Java compiler to use (e.g., <code>'/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/javac'</code>).
<code>JAR</code>	Path to the <code>jar</code> tool to use (e.g., <code>'/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/jar'</code> or <code>'/usr/local/bin/fastjar'</code>).
<code>APPLETVIEWER</code>	Path to the <code>appletviewer</code> utility (e.g., <code>'/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/appletviewer'</code>).
<code>JAVA</code>	Path to the <code>java</code> executable. Use this for executing Java programs (e.g., <code>'/usr/local/openjdk6/bin/java'</code>).
<code>JAVADOC</code>	Path to the <code>javadoc</code> utility program.
<code>JAVAH</code>	Path to the <code>javah</code> program.
<code>JAVAP</code>	Path to the <code>javap</code> program.
<code>JAVA_KEYTOOL</code>	Path to the <code>keytool</code> utility program.
<code>JAVA_N2A</code>	Path to the <code>native2ascii</code> tool.
<code>JAVA_POLICYTOOL</code>	Path to the <code>policytool</code> program.
<code>JAVA_SERIALVER</code>	Path to the <code>serialver</code> utility program.
<code>RMIC</code>	Path to the RMI stub/skeleton generator, <code>rmic</code> .
<code>RMIREGISTRY</code>	Path to the RMI registry program, <code>rmiregistry</code> .
<code>RMID</code>	Path to the RMI daemon program <code>rmid</code> .
<code>JAVA_CLASSES</code>	Path to the archive that contains the JDK class files, <code>\${JAVA_HOME}/jre/lib/rt.jar</code> .

You may use the `java-debug make` target to get information for debugging your port. It will display the value of many of the forecited variables.

Additionally, the following constants are defined so all Java ports may be installed in a consistent way:

Table 6-18. Constants Defined for Ports That Use Java

Constant	Value
JAVASHAREDIR	The base directory for everything related to Java. Default: <code>\${PREFIX}/share/java</code> .
JAVAJARDIR	The directory where JAR files should be installed. Default: <code>\${JAVASHAREDIR}/classes</code> .
JAVALIBDIR	The directory where JAR files installed by other ports are located. Default: <code>\${LOCALBASE}/share/java/classes</code> .

The related entries are defined in both `PLIST_SUB` (documented in Section 7.1) and `SUB_LIST`.

6.12.2 Building with Ant

When the port is to be built using Apache Ant, it has to define `USE_ANT`. Ant is thus considered to be the sub-make command. When no `do-build` target is defined by the port, a default one will be set that simply runs Ant according to `MAKE_ENV`, `MAKE_ARGS` and `ALL_TARGET`. This is similar to the `USE_GMAKE` mechanism, which is documented in Section 6.3.

6.12.3 Best Practices

When porting a Java library, your port should install the JAR file(s) in `${JAVAJARDIR}`, and everything else under `${JAVASHAREDIR}/${PORTNAME}` (except for the documentation, see below). In order to reduce the packing file size, you may reference the JAR file(s) directly in the `Makefile`. Just use the following statement (where `myport.jar` is the name of the JAR file installed as part of the port):

```
PLIST_FILES+=    %%JAVAJARDIR%%/myport.jar
```

When porting a Java application, the port usually installs everything under a single directory (including its JAR dependencies). The use of `${JAVASHAREDIR}/${PORTNAME}` is strongly encouraged in this regard. It is up to the porter to decide whether the port should install the additional JAR dependencies under this directory or directly use the already installed ones (from `${JAVAJARDIR}`).

Regardless of the type of your port (library or application), the additional documentation should be installed in the same location as for any other port. The JavaDoc tool is known to produce a different set of files depending on the version of the JDK that is used. For ports that do not enforce the use of a particular JDK, it is therefore a complex task to specify the packing list (`pkg-plist`). This is one reason why porters are strongly encouraged to use the `PORTDOCS` macro. Moreover, even if you can predict the set of files that will be generated by `javadoc`, the size of the resulting `pkg-plist` advocates for the use of `PORTDOCS`.

The default value for `DATADIR` is `${PREFIX}/share/${PORTNAME}`. It is a good idea to override `DATADIR` to `${JAVASHAREDIR}/${PORTNAME}` for Java ports. Indeed, `DATADIR` is automatically added to `PLIST_SUB` (documented in Section 7.1) so you may use `%%DATADIR%%` directly in `pkg-plist`.

As for the choice of building Java ports from source or directly installing them from a binary distribution, there is no defined policy at the time of writing. However, people from the FreeBSD Java Project (<http://www.freebsd.org/java/>) encourage porters to have their ports built from source whenever it is a trivial task.

All the features that have been presented in this section are implemented in `bsd.java.mk`. If you ever think that your port needs more sophisticated Java support, please first have a look at the `bsd.java.mk` SVN log (<http://svn.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/Mk/bsd.java.mk?view=markup>) as it usually takes some time to document the latest features. Then, if you think the support you are lacking would be beneficial to many other Java ports, feel free to discuss it on the FreeBSD Java Language mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-java>).

Although there is a `java` category for PRs, it refers to the JDK porting effort from the FreeBSD Java project. Therefore, you should submit your Java port in the `ports` category as for any other port, unless the issue you are trying to resolve is related to either a JDK implementation or `bsd.java.mk`.

Similarly, there is a defined policy regarding the `CATEGORIES` of a Java port, which is detailed in Section 5.3.

6.13 Web Applications, Apache and PHP

6.13.1 Apache

Table 6-19. Variables for Ports That Use Apache

<code>USE_APACHE</code>	The port requires Apache. Possible values: <code>yes</code> (gets any version), <code>20</code> , <code>22</code> , <code>20-22</code> , <code>20+</code> , etc. The default <code>APACHE</code> version is <code>22</code> . More details are available in <code>ports/Mk/bsd.apache.mk</code> and at wiki.freebsd.org/Apache/ (http://wiki.freebsd.org/Apache/).
<code>WITH_APACHE2</code>	This variable is deprecated and should not be used any more.
<code>APXS</code>	Full path to the <code>apxs</code> binary. Can be overridden in your port.
<code>HTTPD</code>	Full path to the <code>httpd</code> binary. Can be overridden in your port.
<code>APACHE_VERSION</code>	The version of present Apache installation (read-only variable). This variable is only available after inclusion of <code>bsd.port.pre.mk</code> . Possible values: <code>20</code> , <code>22</code> .
<code>APACHEMODDIR</code>	Directory for Apache modules. This variable is automatically expanded in <code>pkg-plist</code> .
<code>APACHEINCLUDEDIR</code>	Directory for Apache headers. This variable is automatically expanded in <code>pkg-plist</code> .
<code>APACHEETCDIR</code>	Directory for Apache configuration files. This variable is automatically expanded in <code>pkg-plist</code> .

Table 6-20. Useful Variables for Porting Apache Modules

MODULENAME	Name of the module. Default value is <code>PORTNAME</code> . Example: <code>mod_hello</code>
SHORTMODNAME	Short name of the module. Automatically derived from <code>MODULENAME</code> , but can be overridden. Example: <code>hello</code>
AP_FAST_BUILD	Use <code>apxs</code> to compile and install the module.
AP_GENPLIST	Also automatically creates a <code>pkg-plist</code> .
AP_INC	Adds a directory to a header search path during compilation.
AP_LIB	Adds a directory to a library search path during compilation.
AP_EXTRAS	Additional flags to pass to <code>apxs</code> .

6.13.2 Web Applications

Web applications should be installed into `PREFIX/www/appname`. For your convenience, this path is available both in `Makefile` and in `pkg-plist` as `WWWDIR`, and the path relative to `PREFIX` is available in `Makefile` as `WWWDIR_REL`.

The user and group of web server process are available as `WWWOWN` and `WWWGRP`, in case you need to change the ownership of some files. The default values of both are `www`. If you want different values for your port, use `WWWOWN?= myuser` notation, to allow user to override it easily.

Do not depend on Apache unless the web app explicitly needs Apache. Respect that users may wish to run your web app on different web server than Apache.

6.13.3 PHP

Table 6-21. Variables for Ports That Use PHP

USE_PHP	The port requires PHP. The value <code>yes</code> adds a dependency on PHP. The list of required PHP extensions can be specified instead. Example: <code>pcre xml gettext</code>
DEFAULT_PHP_VER	Selects which major version of PHP will be installed as a dependency when no PHP is installed yet. Default is 5. Possible values: 4, 5
IGNORE_WITH_PHP	The port does not work with PHP of the given version. Possible values: 4, 5
USE_PHPIZE	The port will be built as a PHP extension.
USE_PHPEXT	The port will be treated as a PHP extension, including installation and registration in the extension registry.
USE_PHP_BUILD	Set PHP as a build dependency.
WANT_PHP_CLI	Want the CLI (command line) version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_CGI	Want the CGI version of PHP.

WANT_PHP_MOD	Want the Apache module version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_SCR	Want the CLI or the CGI version of PHP.
WANT_PHP_WEB	Want the Apache module or the CGI version of PHP.

6.13.4 PEAR Modules

Porting PEAR modules is a very simple process.

Use the variables `FILES`, `TESTS`, `DATA`, `SQLS`, `SCRIPTFILES`, `DOCS` and `EXAMPLES` to list the files you want to install. All listed files will be automatically installed into the appropriate locations and added to `pkg-plist`.

Include `${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear/bsd.pear.mk` on the last line of the Makefile.

Example 6-7. Example Makefile for PEAR Class

```

PORTNAME=      Date
PORTVERSION=   1.4.3
CATEGORIES=    devel www pear

MAINTAINER=    example@domain.com
COMMENT=       PEAR Date and Time Zone Classes

BUILD_DEPENDS= ${PEARDIR}/PEAR.php:${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear-PEAR
RUN_DEPENDS:=  ${BUILD_DEPENDS}

FILES=         Date.php Date/Calc.php Date/Human.php Date/Span.php \
               Date/TimeZone.php
TESTS=         test_calc.php test_date_methods_span.php testunit.php \
               testunit_date.php testunit_date_span.php wknotest.txt \
               bug674.php bug727_1.php bug727_2.php bug727_3.php \
               bug727_4.php bug967.php weeksinmonth_4_monday.txt \
               weeksinmonth_4_sunday.txt weeksinmonth_rdm_monday.txt \
               weeksinmonth_rdm_sunday.txt
DOCS=          TODO
__DOCSDIR=     .

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>
.include "${PORTSDIR}/devel/pear/bsd.pear.mk"
.include <bsd.port.post.mk>

```

6.14 Using Python

The Ports Collection supports parallel installation of multiple Python versions. Ports should make sure to use a correct `python` interpreter, according to the user-settable `PYTHON_VERSION` variable. Most prominently, this means replacing the path to `python` executable in scripts with the value of `PYTHON_CMD` variable.

Ports that install files under `PYTHON_SITELIBDIR` should use the `pyXY-` package name prefix, so their package name embeds the version of Python they are installed into.

```
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ${PYTHON_PKGNAMEPREFIX}
```

Table 6-22. Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Python

<code>USE_PYTHON</code>	The port needs Python. Minimal required version can be specified with values such as <code>2.6+</code> . Version ranges can also be specified, by separating two version numbers with a dash, e.g.: <code>2.6-2.7</code>
<code>USE_PYDISTUTILS</code>	Use Python distutils for configuring, compiling and installing. This is required when the port comes with <code>setup.py</code> . This overrides the <code>do-build</code> and <code>do-install</code> targets and may also override <code>do-configure</code> if <code>GNU_CONFIGURE</code> is not defined.
<code>PYTHON_PKGNAMEPREFIX</code>	Used as a <code>PKGNAMEPREFIX</code> to distinguish packages for different Python versions. Example: <code>py24-</code>
<code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code>	Location of the site-packages tree, that contains installation path of Python (usually <code>LOCALBASE</code>). The <code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code> variable can be very useful when installing Python modules.
<code>PYTHONPREFIX_SITELIBDIR</code>	The PREFIX-clean variant of <code>PYTHON_SITELIBDIR</code> . Always use <code>%%PYTHON_SITELIBDIR%%</code> in <code>pkg-plist</code> when possible. The default value of <code>%%PYTHON_SITELIBDIR%%</code> is <code>lib/python%%PYTHON_VERSION%%/site-packages</code>
<code>PYTHON_CMD</code>	Python interpreter command line, including version number.
<code>PYNUMERIC</code>	Dependency line for numeric extension.
<code>PYNUMPY</code>	Dependency line for the new numeric extension, numpy. (<code>PYNUMERIC</code> is deprecated by upstream vendor).
<code>PYXML</code>	Dependency line for XML extension (not needed for Python 2.0 and higher as it is also in base distribution).
<code>USE_TWISTED</code>	Add dependency on twistedCore. The list of required components can be specified as a value of this variable. Example: <code>web lore pair flow</code>
<code>USE_ZOPE</code>	Add dependency on Zope, a web application platform. Change Python dependency to Python 2.7. Set <code>ZOPEBASEDIR</code> containing a directory with Zope installation.

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.python.mk`.

6.15 Using Tcl/Tk

The Ports Collection supports parallel installation of multiple **Tcl/Tk** versions. Ports should try to support at least the default **Tcl/Tk** version and higher with the `USE_TCL` and `USE_TK` variables. It is possible to specify the desired version of `tcl` with the `WITH_TCL_VER` variable.

Table 6-23. The Most Useful Variables for Ports That Use Tcl/Tk

<code>USE_TCL</code>	The port depends on the Tcl library (not the shell). Minimal required version can be specified with values such as 84+. Individual unsupported versions can be specified with the <code>INVALID_TCL_VER</code> variable.
<code>USE_TCL_BUILD</code>	The port needs Tcl only during the build time.
<code>USE_TCL_WRAPPER</code>	Ports that require the Tcl shell and do not require a specific <code>tclsh</code> version should use this new variable. The <code>tclsh</code> wrapper is installed on the system. The user can specify the desired <code>tcl</code> shell to use.
<code>WITH_TCL_VER</code>	User-defined variable that sets the desired Tcl version.
<code>UNIQUENAME_WITH_TCL_VER</code>	Like <code>WITH_TCL_VER</code> , but per-port.
<code>USE_TCL_THREADS</code>	Require a threaded build of Tcl/Tk .
<code>USE_TK</code>	The port depends on the Tk library (not the wish shell). Implies <code>USE_TCL</code> with the same value. For more information see the description of <code>USE_TCL</code> variable.
<code>USE_TK_BUILD</code>	Analog to the <code>USE_TCL_BUILD</code> variable.
<code>USE_TK_WRAPPER</code>	Analog to the <code>USE_TCL_WRAPPER</code> variable.
<code>WITH_TK_VER</code>	Analog to the <code>WITH_TCL_VER</code> variable and implies <code>WITH_TCL_VER</code> of the same value.

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.tcl.mk`.

6.16 Using Emacs

This section is yet to be written.

6.17 Using Ruby

Table 6-24. Useful Variables for Ports That Use Ruby

Variable	Description
<code>USE_RUBY</code>	The port requires Ruby.
<code>USE_RUBY_EXTCONF</code>	The port uses <code>extconf.rb</code> to configure.
<code>USE_RUBY_SETUP</code>	The port uses <code>setup.rb</code> to configure.
<code>RUBY_SETUP</code>	Set to the alternative name of <code>setup.rb</code> . Common value is <code>install.rb</code> .

The following table shows the selected variables available to port authors via the ports infrastructure. These variables should be used to install files into their proper locations. Use them in `pkg-plist` as much as possible. These variables should not be redefined in the port.

Table 6-25. Selected Read-Only Variables for Ports That Use Ruby

Variable	Description	Example value
RUBY_PKGNAMEPREFIX	Used as a <code>PKGNAMEPREFIX</code> to distinguish packages for different Ruby versions.	<code>ruby18-</code>
RUBY_VERSION	Full version of Ruby in the form of <code>x.y.z</code> .	<code>1.8.2</code>
RUBY_SITELIBDIR	Architecture independent libraries installation path.	<code>/usr/local/lib/ruby/site_ruby/1.8</code>
RUBY_SITEARCHLIBDIR	Architecture dependent libraries installation path.	<code>/usr/local/lib/ruby/site_ruby/1.8/amd64-fr</code>
RUBY_MOODOCDIR	Module documentation installation path.	<code>/usr/local/share/doc/ruby18/patsy</code>
RUBY_MODEXAMPLESDIR	Module examples installation path.	<code>/usr/local/share/examples/ruby18/patsy</code>

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.ruby.mk`.

6.18 Using SDL

The `USE_SDL` variable is used to autoconfigure the dependencies for ports which use an SDL based library like `devel/sdl12` and `x11-toolkits/sdl_gui`.

The following SDL libraries are recognized at the moment:

- `sdl`: `devel/sdl12`
- `gfx`: `graphics/sdl_gfx`
- `gui`: `x11-toolkits/sdl_gui`
- `image`: `graphics/sdl_image`
- `ldbad`: `devel/sdl_ldbad`
- `mixer`: `audio/sdl_mixer`
- `mm`: `devel/sdlmm`
- `net`: `net/sdl_net`
- `sound`: `audio/sdl_sound`
- `ttf`: `graphics/sdl_ttf`

Therefore, if a port has a dependency on `net/sdl_net` and `audio/sdl_mixer`, the syntax will be:

```
USE_SDL=      net mixer
```

The dependency `devel/sdl12`, which is required by `net/sdl_net` and `audio/sdl_mixer`, is automatically added as well.

If you use `USE_SDL`, it will automatically:

- Add a dependency on **sdl12-config** to `BUILD_DEPENDS`
- Add the variable `SDL_CONFIG` to `CONFIGURE_ENV`
- Add the dependencies of the selected libraries to the `LIB_DEPENDS`

To check whether an SDL library is available, you can do it with the `WANT_SDL` variable:

```
WANT_SDL=          yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if ${HAVE_SDL:Mmixer}!=" "
USE_SDL+=          mixer
.endif

.include <bsd.port.post.mk>
```

6.19 Using wxWidgets

This section describes the status of the **wxWidgets** libraries in the ports tree and its integration with the ports system.

6.19.1 Introduction

There are many versions of the **wxWidgets** libraries which conflict between them (install files under the same name). In the ports tree this problem has been solved by installing each version under a different name using version number suffixes.

The obvious disadvantage of this is that each application has to be modified to find the expected version. Fortunately, most of the applications call the `wx-config` script to determine the necessary compiler and linker flags. The script is named differently for every available version. Majority of applications respect an environment variable, or accept a `configure` argument, to specify which `wx-config` script to call. Otherwise they have to be patched.

6.19.2 Version Selection

To make your port use a specific version of **wxWidgets** there are two variables available for defining (if only one is defined the other will be set to a default value):

Table 6-26. Variables to Select wxWidgets Versions

Variable	Description	Default value
<code>USE_WX</code>	List of versions the port can use	All available versions
<code>USE_WX_NOT</code>	List of versions the port can not use	None

The following is a list of available **wxWidgets** versions and the corresponding ports in the tree:

Table 6-27. Available wxWidgets Versions

Version	Port
2.4	x11-toolkits/wxgtk24
2.6	x11-toolkits/wxgtk26
2.8	x11-toolkits/wxgtk28

Note: The versions starting from 2.5 also come in Unicode version and are installed by a slave port named like the normal one plus a `-unicode` suffix, but this can be handled with variables (see Section 6.19.4).

The variables in Table 6-26 can be set to one or more of the following combinations separated by spaces:

Table 6-28. wxWidgets Version Specifications

Description	Example
Single version	2.4
Ascending range	2.4+
Descending range	2.6-
Full range (must be ascending)	2.4-2.6

There are also some variables to select the preferred versions from the available ones. They can be set to a list of versions, the first ones will have higher priority.

Table 6-29. Variables to Select Preferred wxWidgets Versions

Name	Designed for
WANT_WX_VER	the port
WITH_WX_VER	the user

6.19.3 Component Selection

There are other applications that, while not being **wxWidgets** libraries, are related to them. These applications can be specified in the `WX_COMPS` variable. The following components are available:

Table 6-30. Available wxWidgets Components

Name	Description	Version restriction
<code>wx</code>	main library	none
<code>contrib</code>	contributed libraries	none
<code>python</code>	wxPython (Python bindings)	2.4-2.6
<code>mozilla</code>	wxMozilla	2.4
<code>svg</code>	wxSVG	2.6

The dependency type can be selected for each component by adding a suffix separated by a semicolon. If not present then a default type will be used (see Table 6-32). The following types are available:

Table 6-31. Available wxWidgets Dependency Types

Name	Description
build	Component is required for building, equivalent to BUILD_DEPENDS
run	Component is required for running, equivalent to RUN_DEPENDS
lib	Component is required for building and running, equivalent to LIB_DEPENDS

The default values for the components are detailed in the following table:

Table 6-32. Default wxWidgets Dependency Types

Component	Dependency type
wx	lib
contrib	lib
python	run
mozilla	lib
svg	lib

Example 6-8. Selecting wxWidgets Components

The following fragment corresponds to a port which uses **wxWidgets** version 2.4 and its contributed libraries.

```
USE_WX=      2.4
WX_COMPS=    wx contrib
```

6.19.4 Unicode

The **wxWidgets** library supports Unicode since version 2.5. In the ports tree both versions are available and can be selected with the following variables:

Table 6-33. Variables to Select Unicode in wxWidgets Versions

Variable	Description	Designed for
WX_UNICODE	The port works <i>only</i> with the Unicode version	the port
WANT_UNICODE	The port works with both versions but prefers the Unicode one	the port
WITH_UNICODE	The port will use the Unicode version	the user

Variable	Description	Designed for
WITHOUT_UNICODE	The port will use the normal version if supported (when <code>WX_UNICODE</code> is not defined)	the user

Warning: Do not use `WX_UNICODE` for ports that can use both Unicode and normal versions. If you want the port to use Unicode by default define `WANT_UNICODE` instead.

6.19.5 Detecting Installed Versions

To detect an installed version you have to define `WANT_WX`. If you do not set it to a specific version then the components will have a version suffix. The `HAVE_WX` variable will be filled after detection.

Example 6-9. Detecting Installed wxWidgets Versions and Components

The following fragment can be used in a port that uses **wxWidgets** if it is installed, or an option is selected.

```
WANT_WX=          yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_WX) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MWX) || !empty(HAVE_WX:Mwx-2.4)
USE_WX=          2.4
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-wx
.endif
```

The following fragment can be used in a port that enables **wxPython** support if it is installed or if an option is selected, in addition to **wxWidgets**, both version 2.6.

```
USE_WX=          2.6
WX_COMPS=        wx
WANT_WX=          2.6

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_WXPYTHON) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MWXPYTHON) || !empty(HAVE_WX:Mpython)
WX_COMPS+=       python
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --enable-wxpython
.endif
```

6.19.6 Defined Variables

The following variables are available in the port (after defining one from Table 6-26).

Name	Description
------	-------------

Table 6-34. Variables Defined for Ports That Use wxWidgets

Name	Description
WX_CONFIG	The path to the wxWidgets <code>wx-config</code> script (with different name)
WXRC_CMD	The path to the wxWidgets <code>wxrc</code> program (with different name)
WX_VERSION	The wxWidgets version that is going to be used (e.g., 2.6)
WX_UNICODE	If not defined but Unicode is going to be used then it will be defined

6.19.7 Processing in `bsd.port.pre.mk`

If you need to use the variables for running commands right after including `bsd.port.pre.mk` you need to define `WX_PREMK`.

Important: If you define `WX_PREMK`, then the version, dependencies, components and defined variables will not change if you modify the **wxWidgets** port variables *after* including `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

Example 6-10. Using wxWidgets Variables in Commands

The following fragment illustrates the use of `WX_PREMK` by running the `wx-config` script to obtain the full version string, assign it to a variable and pass it to the program.

```
USE_WX=      2.4
WX_PREMK=    yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if exists(${WX_CONFIG})
VER_STR!=    ${WX_CONFIG} --release

PLIST_SUB+=  VERSION="${VER_STR}"
.endif
```

Note: The **wxWidgets** variables can be safely used in commands when they are inside targets without the need of `WX_PREMK`.

6.19.8 Additional `configure` Arguments

Some GNU `configure` scripts can not find **wxWidgets** with just the `WX_CONFIG` environment variable set, requiring additional arguments. The `WX_CONF_ARGS` variable can be used for provide them.

Table 6-35. Legal Values for `WX_CONF_ARGS`

Possible value	Resulting argument
<code>absolute</code>	<code>--with-wx-config=\${WX_CONFIG}</code>
<code>relative</code>	<code>--with-wx=\${LOCALBASE}</code> <code>--with-wx-config=\${WX_CONFIG:T}</code>

6.20 Using Lua

This section describes the status of the **Lua** libraries in the ports tree and its integration with the ports system.

6.20.1 Introduction

There are many versions of the **Lua** libraries and corresponding interpreters, which conflict between them (install files under the same name). In the ports tree this problem has been solved by installing each version under a different name using version number suffixes.

The obvious disadvantage of this is that each application has to be modified to find the expected version. But it can be solved by adding some additional flags to the compiler and linker.

6.20.2 Version Selection

To make your port use a specific version of **Lua** there are two variables available for defining (if only one is defined the other will be set to a default value):

Table 6-36. Variables to Select Lua Versions

Variable	Description	Default value
<code>USE_LUA</code>	List of versions the port can use	All available versions
<code>USE_LUA_NOT</code>	List of versions the port can not use	None

The following is a list of available **Lua** versions and the corresponding ports in the tree:

Table 6-37. Available Lua Versions

Version	Port
4.0	<code>lang/lua4</code>
5.0	<code>lang/lua50</code>
5.1	<code>lang/lua</code>

The variables in Table 6-36 can be set to one or more of the following combinations separated by spaces:

Table 6-38. Lua Version Specifications

Description	Example
Single version	4.0
Ascending range	5.0+
Descending range	5.0-
Full range (must be ascending)	5.0-5.1

There are also some variables to select the preferred versions from the available ones. They can be set to a list of versions, the first ones will have higher priority.

Table 6-39. Variables to Select Preferred Lua Versions

Name	Designed for
WANT_LUA_VER	the port
WITH_LUA_VER	the user

Example 6-11. Selecting the Lua Version

The following fragment is from a port which can use **Lua** version 5.0 or 5.1, and uses 5.0 by default. It can be overridden by the user with `WITH_LUA_VER`.

```
USE_LUA=      5.0-5.1
WANT_LUA_VER= 5.0
```

6.20.3 Component Selection

There are other applications that, while not being **Lua** libraries, are related to them. These applications can be specified in the `LUA_COMPS` variable. The following components are available:

Table 6-40. Available Lua Components

Name	Description	Version restriction
lua	main library	none
tolua	Library for accessing C/C++ code	4.0-5.0
ruby	Ruby bindings	4.0-5.0

Note: There are more components but they are modules for the interpreter, not used by applications (only by other modules).

The dependency type can be selected for each component by adding a suffix separated by a semicolon. If not present then a default type will be used (see Table 6-42). The following types are available:

Table 6-41. Available Lua Dependency Types

Name	Description
build	Component is required for building, equivalent to BUILD_DEPENDS
run	Component is required for running, equivalent to RUN_DEPENDS
lib	Component is required for building and running, equivalent to LIB_DEPENDS

The default values for the components are detailed in the following table:

Table 6-42. Default Lua Dependency Types

Component	Dependency type
lua	lib for 4.0–5.0 (shared) and build for 5.1 (static)
tolua	build (static)
ruby	lib (shared)

Example 6-12. Selecting Lua Components

The following fragment corresponds to a port which uses **Lua** version 4.0 and its **Ruby** bindings.

```
USE_LUA=      4.0
LUA_COMPS=    lua ruby
```

6.20.4 Detecting Installed Versions

To detect an installed version you have to define WANT_LUA. If you do not set it to a specific version then the components will have a version suffix. The HAVE_LUA variable will be filled after detection.

Example 6-13. Detecting Installed Lua Versions and Components

The following fragment can be used in a port that uses **Lua** if it is installed, or an option is selected.

```
WANT_LUA=      yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_LUA5) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MLUA5) || !empty(HAVE_LUA:Mlua-5.[01])
USE_LUA=      5.0-5.1
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=      --enable-lua5
.endif
```

The following fragment can be used in a port that enables **tolua** support if it is installed or if an option is selected, in addition to **Lua**, both version 4.0.

```
USE_LUA=      4.0
LUA_COMPS=    lua
WANT_LUA=      4.0
```

```
.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if defined(WITH_TOLUA) || !empty(PORT_OPTIONS:MTOLUA) || !empty(HAVE_LUA:Mtolua)
LUA_COMPS+=          tolua
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=     --enable-tolua
.endif
```

6.20.5 Defined Variables

The following variables are available in the port (after defining one from Table 6-36).

Table 6-43. Variables Defined for Ports That Use Lua

Name	Description
LUA_VER	The Lua version that is going to be used (e.g., 5.1)
LUA_VER_SH	The Lua shared library major version (e.g., 1)
LUA_VER_STR	The Lua version without the dots (e.g., 51)
LUA_PREFIX	The prefix where Lua (and components) is installed
LUA_SUBDIR	The directory under \${PREFIX}/bin, \${PREFIX}/share and \${PREFIX}/lib where Lua is installed
LUA_INCDIR	The directory where Lua and tolua header files are installed
LUA_LIBDIR	The directory where Lua and tolua libraries are installed
LUA_MODLIBDIR	The directory where Lua module libraries (.so) are installed
LUA_MODSHAREDIR	The directory where Lua modules (.lua) are installed
LUA_PKGNAMEPREFIX	The package name prefix used by Lua modules
LUA_CMD	The path to the Lua interpreter
LUAC_CMD	The path to the Lua compiler
TOLUA_CMD	The path to the tolua program

Example 6-14. Telling the Port Where to Find Lua

The following fragment shows how to tell a port that uses a configure script where the **Lua** header files and libraries are.

```
USE_LUA=          4.0
GNU_CONFIGURE=    yes
CONFIGURE_ENV=    CPPFLAGS="-I${LUA_INCDIR}" LDFLAGS="-L${LUA_LIBDIR}"
```

6.20.6 Processing in `bsd.port.pre.mk`

If you need to use the variables for running commands right after including `bsd.port.pre.mk` you need to define `LUA_PREMK`.

Important: If you define `LUA_PREMK`, then the version, dependencies, components and defined variables will not change if you modify the **Lua** port variables *after* including `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

Example 6-15. Using Lua Variables in Commands

The following fragment illustrates the use of `LUA_PREMK` by running the **Lua** interpreter to obtain the full version string, assign it to a variable and pass it to the program.

```
USE_LUA=          5.0
LUA_PREMK=        yes

.include <bsd.port.pre.mk>

.if exists(${LUA_CMD})
VER_STR!=         ${LUA_CMD} -v

CFLAGS+=          -DLUA_VERSION_STRING="${VER_STR}"
.endif
```

Note: The **Lua** variables can be safely used in commands when they are inside targets without the need of `LUA_PREMK`.

6.21 Using Xfce

The `USE_XFCE` variable is used to autoconfigure the dependencies for ports which use an Xfce based library or application like `x11-toolkits/libxfce4gui` and `x11-wm/xfce4-panel`.

The following Xfce libraries and applications are recognized at the moment:

- **libexo:** `x11/libexo`
- **libgui:** `x11-toolkits/libxfce4gui`
- **libutil:** `x11/libxfce4util`
- **libmcs:** `x11/libxfce4mcs`
- **mcsmanager:** `sysutils/xfce4-mcs-manager`
- **panel:** `x11-wm/xfce4-panel`
- **thunar:** `x11-fm/thunar`
- **wm:** `x11-wm/xfce4-wm`

- `xfdev`: `dev/xfce4-dev-tools`

The following additional parameters are recognized:

- `configenv`: Use this if your port requires a special modified `CONFIGURE_ENV` to find its required libraries.

```
-I${LOCALBASE}/include -L${LOCALBASE}/lib
```

gets added to `CPPFLAGS` to `CONFIGURE_ENV`.

Therefore, if a port has a dependency on `sysutils/xfce4-mcs-manager` and requires the special `CPPFLAGS` in its configure environment, the syntax will be:

```
USE_XFCE=          mcsmanager configenv
```

6.22 Using Mozilla

Table 6-44. Variables for Ports That Use Mozilla

<code>USE_GECKO</code>	Gecko backend the port can handle. Possible values: <code>libxul</code> (<code>libxul.so</code>), <code>seamonkey</code> (<code>libgtkembedmoz.so</code> , deprecated, should not be used any more).
<code>USE_FIREFOX</code>	The port requires Firefox as a runtime dependency. Possible values: <code>yes</code> (get default version), 40, 36, 35. Default dependency is on version 40.
<code>USE_FIREFOX_BUILD</code>	The port requires Firefox as a buildtime dependency. Possible values: see <code>USE_FIREFOX</code> . This automatically sets <code>USE_FIREFOX</code> and assigns the same value.
<code>USE_SEAMONKEY</code>	The port requires SeaMonkey as a runtime dependency. Possible values: <code>yes</code> (get default version), 20, 11 (deprecated, should not be used any more). Default dependency is on version 20.
<code>USE_SEAMONKEY_BUILD</code>	The port requires SeaMonkey as a buildtime dependency. Possible values: see <code>USE_SEAMONKEY</code> . This automatically sets <code>USE_SEAMONKEY</code> and assigns the same value.
<code>USE_THUNDERBIRD</code>	The port requires Thunderbird as a runtime dependency. Possible values: <code>yes</code> (get default version), 31, 30 (deprecated, should not be used any more). Default dependency is on version 31.
<code>USE_THUNDERBIRD_BUILD</code>	The port requires Thunderbird as a buildtime dependency. Possible values: see <code>USE_THUNDERBIRD</code> . This automatically sets <code>USE_THUNDERBIRD</code> and assigns the same value.

A complete list of available variables can be found in `/usr/ports/Mk/bsd.gecko.mk`.

6.23 Using Databases

Table 6-45. Variables for Ports Using Databases

Variable	Means
USE_BDB	If variable is set to <code>yes</code> , add dependency on <code>databases/db41</code> port. The variable may also be set to values: 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 46, 47, 48, or 51. You can declare a range of acceptable values, <code>USE_BDB=42+</code> will find the highest installed version, and fall back to 42 if nothing else is installed.
USE_MYSQL	If variable is set to <code>yes</code> , add dependency on <code>databases/mysql55-client</code> port. An associated variable, <code>WANT_MYSQL_VER</code> , may be set to values such as 323, 40, 41, 50, 51, 52, 55, or 60.
USE_PGSQL	If set to <code>yes</code> , add dependency on <code>databases/postgresql90-client</code> port. An associated variable, <code>WANT_PGSQL_VER</code> , may be set to values such as 83, 84, 90, 91 or 92. You can declare a minimum or maximum value; <code>WANT_PGSQL_VER= 90+</code> will cause the port to depend on a minimum version of 9.0.
USE_SQLITE	If variable is set to <code>yes</code> , add dependency on <code>databases/sqlite3</code> port. The variable may also be set to values: 3, 2.

More details are available in `bsd.database.mk`

(<http://svn.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/Mk/bsd.database.mk?view=markup>).

6.24 Starting and Stopping Services (`rc` Scripts)

`rc.d` scripts are used to start services on system startup, and to give administrators a standard way of stopping, starting and restarting the service. Ports integrate into the system `rc.d` framework. Details on its usage can be found in the `rc.d` Handbook chapter

(http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/configtuning-rcd.html). Detailed explanation of available commands is provided in `rc(8)` and `rc.subr(8)`. Finally, there is an article (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/rc-scripting) on practical aspects of `rc.d` scripting.

One or more `rc.d` scripts can be installed:

```
USE_RC_SUBR=    doormand
```

Scripts must be placed in the `files` subdirectory and a `.in` suffix must be added to their filename. Standard `SUB_LIST` expansions will be used for this file. Use of the `%%PREFIX%%` and `%%LOCALBASE%%` expansions is strongly encouraged as well. More on `SUB_LIST` in the relevant section.

Prior to FreeBSD 6.1-RELEASE, integration with `rcorder(8)` is available by using `USE_RCORDER` instead of `USE_RC_SUBR`. However, use of this method is not necessary unless the port has an option to install itself in the base,

or the service needs to run prior to the `FILESYSTEMS rc.d` script in the base.

As of FreeBSD 6.1-RELEASE, local `rc.d` scripts (including those installed by ports) are included in the overall `rcorder(8)` of the base system.

Example simple `rc.d` script:

```
#!/bin/sh

# $FreeBSD$
#
# PROVIDE: doormand
# REQUIRE: LOGIN
# KEYWORD: shutdown
#
# Add the following lines to /etc/rc.conf.local or /etc/rc.conf
# to enable this service:
#
# doormand_enable (bool):      Set to NO by default.
#                               Set it to YES to enable doormand.
# doormand_config (path):     Set to %%PREFIX%%/etc/doormand/doormand.cf
#                               by default.

. /etc/rc.subr

name=doormand
rcvar=doormand_enable

load_rc_config $name

: ${doormand_enable:="NO"}
: ${doormand_config="%%PREFIX%%/etc/doormand/doormand.cf"}

command=%%PREFIX%%/sbin/${name}
pidfile=/var/run/${name}.pid

command_args="-p $pidfile -f $doormand_config"

run_rc_command "$1"
```

Unless there is a good reason to start the service earlier all ports scripts should use

```
REQUIRE: LOGIN
```

If the service runs as a particular user (other than root) this is mandatory.

```
KEYWORD: shutdown
```

is included in the script above because the mythical port we are using as an example starts a service, and should be shut down cleanly when the system shuts down. If the script is not starting a persistent service this is not necessary.

For optional configuration elements the "=" style of default variable assignment is preferable to the "!=" style here, since the former sets a default value only if the variable is unset, and the latter sets one if the variable is unset *or* null. A user might very well include something like

```
doormand_flags=""
```

in their `rc.conf.local` file, and a variable substitution using `:=` would inappropriately override the user's intention. The `_enable` variable is not optional, and should use the `:` for the default.

Note: No new scripts should be added with the `.sh` suffix.

6.24.1 Stopping Services at Deinstall

It is possible to have a service stopped automatically as part of the deinstall routine. We advise using this feature only when it is absolutely necessary to stop a service before its files go away. Usually, it is up to the administrator's discretion to decide, whether to stop the service on deinstall or not. Also note this affects upgrades, too.

A line like this goes in the `pkg-plist`:

```
@stopdaemon doormand
```

The argument must match the content of `USE_RC_SUBR` variable.

6.24.2 Pre-Commit Checklist

Before contributing a port with an `rc.d` script, and more importantly, before committing one, please consult the following checklist to be sure that it is ready.

1. If this is a new file, does it have `.sh` in the file name? If so that should be changed to just `file.in` since new `rc.d` files may not end with that extension.
2. Does the file have a `$FreeBSD$` tag?
3. Do the name of the file (minus `.in`), the `PROVIDE` line, and `$name` all match? The file name matching `PROVIDE` makes debugging easier, especially for `rcorder(8)` issues. Matching the file name and `$name` makes it easier to figure out which variables are relevant in `rc.conf[.local]`. The latter is also what you might call “policy” for all new scripts, including those in the base system.
4. Is the `REQUIRE` line set to `LOGIN`? This is mandatory for scripts that run as a non-root user. If it runs as root, is there a good reason for it to run prior to `LOGIN`? If not, it should run there so that we can loosely group local scripts to a point in `rcorder(8)` after most everything in the base is already running.
5. Does the script start a persistent service? If so, it should have `KEYWORD: shutdown`.
6. Make sure there is no `KEYWORD: FreeBSD` present. This has not been necessary or desirable for years. It is also an indication that the new script was copy/pasted from an old script, so extra caution should be given to the review.
7. If the script uses an interpreted language like `perl`, `python`, or `ruby`, make certain that `command_interpreter` is set appropriately. Otherwise,


```
# service name stop
```

 will probably not work properly. See `service(8)` for more information.
8. Have all occurrences of `/usr/local` been replaced with `%%PREFIX%%`?

9. Do the default variable assignments come after `load_rc_config`?
10. Are there default assignments to empty strings? They should be removed, but double-check that the option is documented in the comments at the top of the file.
11. Are things that are set in variables actually used in the script?
12. Are options listed in the default `name_flags` things that are actually mandatory? If so, they should be in `command_args`. The `-d` option is a red flag (pardon the pun) here, since it is usually the option to “daemonize” the process, and therefore is actually mandatory.
13. The `name_flags` variable should never be included in `command_args` (and vice versa, although that error is less common).
14. Does the script execute any code unconditionally? This is frowned on. Usually these things can/should be dealt with through a `start_precmd`.
15. All boolean tests should utilize the `checkyesno` function. No hand-rolled tests for `[Yy]` `[Ee]` `[Ss]`, etc.
16. If there is a loop (for example, waiting for something to start) does it have a counter to terminate the loop? We do not want the boot to be stuck forever if there is an error.
17. Does the script create files or directories that need specific permissions, for example, a `pid` file that needs to be owned by the user that runs the process? Rather than the traditional `touch(1)/chown(8)/chmod(1)` routine, consider using `install(1)` with the proper command line arguments to do the whole procedure with one step.

6.25 Adding Users and Groups

Some ports require a certain user to be on the installed system. Choose a free UID from 50 to 999 and register it either in `ports/UIDs` (for users) or in `ports/GIDs` (for groups). Make sure you do not use a UID already used by the system or other ports.

Please include a patch against these two files when you require a new user or group to be created for your port.

Then you can use `USERS` and `GROUPS` variables in your `Makefile`, and the user will be automatically created when installing the port.

```
USERS= pulse
GROUPS= pulse pulse-access pulse-rt
```

The current list of reserved UIDs and GIDs can be found in `ports/UIDs` and `ports/GIDs`.

6.26 Ports That Rely on Kernel Sources

Some ports (such as kernel loadable modules) need the kernel source files so that the port can compile. Here is the correct way to determine if the user has them installed:

```
.if !exists(${SRC_BASE}/sys/Makefile)
IGNORE= requires kernel sources to be installed
.endif
```

Chapter 7 Advanced pkg-plist Practices

7.1 Changing pkg-plist Based on Make Variables

Some ports, particularly the `p5-` ports, need to change their `pkg-plist` depending on what options they are configured with (or version of `perl`, in the case of `p5-` ports). To make this easy, any instances in the `pkg-plist` of `%%OSREL%%`, `%%PERL_VER%%`, and `%%PERL_VERSION%%` will be substituted for appropriately. The value of `%%OSREL%%` is the numeric revision of the operating system (e.g., 4.9). `%%PERL_VERSION%%` and `%%PERL_VER%%` is the full version number of `perl` (e.g., 5.8.9). Several other `%%VAR%%` related to port's documentation files are described in the relevant section.

If you need to make other substitutions, you can set the `PLIST_SUB` variable with a list of `VAR=VALUE` pairs and instances of `%%VAR%%` will be substituted with `VALUE` in the `pkg-plist`.

For instance, if you have a port that installs many files in a version-specific subdirectory, you can put something like

```
OCTAVE_VERSION= 2.0.13
PLIST_SUB=      OCTAVE_VERSION=${OCTAVE_VERSION}
```

in the `Makefile` and use `%%OCTAVE_VERSION%%` wherever the version shows up in `pkg-plist`. That way, when you upgrade the port, you will not have to change dozens (or in some cases, hundreds) of lines in the `pkg-plist`.

If your port installs files conditionally on the options set in the port, the usual way of handling it is prefixing the `pkg-plist` lines with a `%%TAG%%` and adding that `TAG` to the `PLIST_SUB` variable inside the `Makefile` with a special value of `@comment`, which makes package tools to ignore the line:

```
.if defined(WITH_X11)
PLIST_SUB+=      X11=" "
.else
PLIST_SUB+=      X11="@comment "
.endif
```

and in the `pkg-plist`:

```
%%X11%%bin/foo-gui
```

This substitution (as well as addition of any manual pages) will be done between the `pre-install` and `do-install` targets, by reading from `PLIST` and writing to `TMPLIST` (default: `WRKDIR/.PLIST.mktmp`). So if your port builds `PLIST` on the fly, do so in or before `pre-install`. Also, if your port needs to edit the resulting file, do so in `post-install` to a file named `TMPLIST`.

Another possibility to modify port's packing list is based on setting the variables `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS`. The value of each variable is regarded as a list of pathnames to write to `TMPLIST` along with `PLIST` contents. Names listed in `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS` are subject to `%%VAR%%` substitution, as described above. Except for that, names from `PLIST_FILES` will appear in the final packing list unchanged, while `@dirrm` will be prepended to names from `PLIST_DIRS`. To take effect, `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS` must be set before `TMPLIST` is written, i.e., in `pre-install` or earlier.

7.2 Empty Directories

7.2.1 Cleaning Up Empty Directories

Do make your ports remove empty directories when they are de-installed. This is usually accomplished by adding `@dirrm` lines for all directories that are specifically created by the port. You need to delete subdirectories before you can delete parent directories.

```
:
lib/X11/oneko/pixmaps/cat.xpm
lib/X11/oneko/sounds/cat.au
:
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko/pixmaps
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko/sounds
@dirrm lib/X11/oneko
```

However, sometimes `@dirrm` will give you errors because other ports share the same directory. You can use `@dirrmtry` to remove only empty directories without warning.

```
@dirrmtry share/doc/gimp
```

This will neither print any error messages nor cause `pkg_delete(1)` to exit abnormally even if `${PREFIX}/share/doc/gimp` is not empty due to other ports installing some files in there.

7.2.2 Creating Empty Directories

Empty directories created during port installation need special attention. They will not get created when installing the package, because packages only store the files, and `pkg_add(1)` creates directories for them as needed. To make sure the empty directory is created when installing the package, add this line to `pkg-plist` above the corresponding `@dirrm` line:

```
@exec mkdir -p %D/share/foo/templates
```

7.3 Configuration Files

If your port installs configuration files to `PREFIX/etc` (or elsewhere) do *not* simply list them in the `pkg-plist`. That will cause `pkg_delete(1)` to remove the files carefully edited by the user, and a re-installation will wipe them out.

Instead, install sample file(s) with a `filename.sample` suffix. Then copy the sample file to the real configuration file name, if it does not already exist. On deinstall delete the configuration file, but only if it is identical to the `.sample` file. You need to handle this both in the port `Makefile`, and in the `pkg-plist` (for installation from the package).

Example of the `Makefile` part:

```
post-install:
    @if [ ! -f ${PREFIX}/etc/orbit.conf ]; then \
        ${CP} -p ${PREFIX}/etc/orbit.conf.sample ${PREFIX}/etc/orbit.conf ; \
    fi
```

For each configuration file, create the following three lines in *pkg-plist*:

```
@unexec if cmp -s %D/etc/orbit.conf.sample %D/etc/orbit.conf; then rm -f %D/etc/orbit.conf; fi
etc/orbit.conf.sample
@exec if [ ! -f %D/etc/orbit.conf ] ; then cp -p %D/%F %B/orbit.conf; fi
```

The order of these lines is important. On deinstallation, the sample file is compared to the actual configuration file. If these files are identical, no changes have been made by the user and the actual file can be safely deleted. Because the sample file must still exist for the comparison, the `@unexec` line comes before the sample configuration file name. On installation, if an actual configuration file is not already present, the sample file is copied to the actual file. The sample file must be present before it can be copied, so the `@exec` line comes after the sample configuration file name.

To debug any issues, temporarily remove the `-s` flag to `cmp(1)` for more output.

See `pkg_create(1)` for more information on `%D` and related substitution markers.

If there is a very good reason not to install a working configuration file by default, leave the `@exec` line out of *pkg-plist* and add a message pointing out that the user must copy and edit the file before the software will work.

7.4 Dynamic Versus Static Package List

A *static package list* is a package list which is available in the Ports Collection either as a *pkg-plist* file (with or without variable substitution), or embedded into the *Makefile* via `PLIST_FILES` and `PLIST_DIRS`. Even if the contents are auto-generated by a tool or a target in the *Makefile* *before* the inclusion into the Ports Collection by a committer, this is still considered a static list, since it is possible to examine it without having to download or compile the distfile.

A *dynamic package list* is a package list which is generated at the time the port is compiled based upon the files and directories which are installed. It is not possible to examine it before the source code of the ported application is downloaded and compiled, or after running a `make clean`.

While the use of dynamic package lists is not forbidden, maintainers should use static package lists wherever possible, as it enables users to `grep(1)` through available ports to discover, for example, which port installs a certain file. Dynamic lists should be primarily used for complex ports where the package list changes drastically based upon optional features of the port (and thus maintaining a static package list is infeasible), or ports which change the package list based upon the version of dependent software used (e.g., ports which generate docs with **Javadoc**).

Maintainers who prefer dynamic package lists are encouraged to add a new target to their port which generates the *pkg-plist* file so that users may examine the contents.

7.5 Automated Package List Creation

First, make sure your port is almost complete, with only *pkg-plist* missing.

Next, create a temporary directory tree into which your port can be installed, and install any dependencies.

```
# mkdir /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME'
# mtree -U -f 'make -V MTREE_FILE' -d -e -p /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME'
# make depends PREFIX=/var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME'
```

Store the directory structure in a new file.


```
# (cd /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME' && find -d * -type d) | sort > OLD-DIRS
```

Create an empty `pkg-plist` file:

```
# :>pkg-plist
```

If your port honors `PREFIX` (which it should) you can then install the port and create the package list.

```
# make install PREFIX=/var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME'
# (cd /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME' && find -d * \! -type d) | sort > pkg-plist
```

You must also add any newly created directories to the packing list.

```
# (cd /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME' && find -d * -type d) | sort | comm -13 OLD-DIRS - | sort -r | sed -e 's#^#@d
```

Finally, you need to tidy up the packing list by hand; it is not *all* automated. Manual pages should be listed in the port's `Makefile` under `MANn`, and not in the package list. User configuration files should be removed, or installed as `filename.sample`. The `info/dir` file should not be listed and appropriate `install-info` lines should be added as noted in the info files section. Any libraries installed by the port should be listed as specified in the shared libraries section.

Alternatively, use the `plist` script in `/usr/ports/Tools/scripts/` to build the package list automatically. The `plist` script is a **Ruby** script that automates most of the manual steps outlined in the previous paragraphs.

The first step is the same as above: take the first three lines, that is, `mkdir`, `mtree` and `make depends`. Then build and install the port:

```
# make install PREFIX=/var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME'
```

And let `plist` create the `pkg-plist` file:

```
# /usr/ports/Tools/scripts/plist -Md -m 'make -V MTREE_FILE' /var/tmp/'make -V PORTNAME' > pkg-plist
```

The packing list still has to be tidied up by hand as stated above.

Another tool that might be used to create an initial `pkg-plist` is `ports-mgmt/genplist`. As with any automated tool, the resulting `pkg-plist` should be checked and manually edited as needed.

Chapter 8 The `pkg-*` Files

There are some tricks we have not mentioned yet about the `pkg-*` files that come in handy sometimes.

8.1 `pkg-message`

If you need to display a message to the installer, you may place the message in `pkg-message`. This capability is often useful to display additional installation steps to be taken after a `pkg_add(1)` or to display licensing information.

When some lines about the build-time knobs or warnings have to be displayed, use `ECHO_MSG`. The `pkg-message` file is only for post-installation steps. Likewise, the distinction between `ECHO_MSG` and `ECHO_CMD` should be kept in mind. The former is for printing informational text to the screen, while the latter is for command pipelining:

```
update-etc-shells:
    @${ECHO_MSG} "updating /etc/shells"
    @${CP} /etc/shells /etc/shells.bak
    @( ${GREP} -v ${PREFIX}/bin/bash /etc/shells.bak; \
        ${ECHO_CMD} ${PREFIX}/bin/bash ) >/etc/shells
    @${RM} /etc/shells.bak
```

Note: The `pkg-message` file does not need to be added to `pkg-plist`. Also, it will not get automatically printed if the user is using the port, not the package, so you should probably display it from the `post-install` target yourself.

8.2 `pkg-install`

If your port needs to execute commands when the binary package is installed with `pkg_add(1)` you can do this via the `pkg-install` script. This script will automatically be added to the package, and will be run twice by `pkg_add(1)`: the first time as `${SH} pkg-install ${PKGNAME} PRE-INSTALL` and the second time as `${SH} pkg-install ${PKGNAME} POST-INSTALL`. `$2` can be tested to determine which mode the script is being run in. The `PKG_PREFIX` environmental variable will be set to the package installation directory. See `pkg_add(1)` for additional information.

Note: This script is not run automatically if you install the port with `make install`. If you are depending on it being run, you will have to explicitly call it from your port's `Makefile`, with a line like `PKG_PREFIX=${PREFIX} ${SH} ${PKGINSTALL} ${PKGNAME} PRE-INSTALL`.

8.3 `pkg-deinstall`

This script executes when a package is removed.

This script will be run twice by `pkg_delete(1)`. The first time as `${SH} pkg-deinstall ${PKGNAME} DEINSTALL` and the second time as `${SH} pkg-deinstall ${PKGNAME} POST-DEINSTALL`.

8.4 *pkg-req*

If your port needs to determine if it should install or not, you can create a *pkg-req* “requirements” script. It will be invoked automatically at installation/de-installation time to determine whether or not installation/de-installation should proceed.

The script will be run at installation time by *pkg_add(1)* as *pkg-req* *\${PKGNAME}* *INSTALL*. At de-installation time it will be run by *pkg_delete(1)* as *pkg-req* *\${PKGNAME}* *DEINSTALL*.

8.5 Changing the Names of *pkg-** Files

All the names of *pkg-** files are defined using variables so you can change them in your Makefile if need be. This is especially useful when you are sharing the same *pkg-** files among several ports or have to write to one of the above files (see writing to places other than *WRKDIR* for why it is a bad idea to write directly into the *pkg-** subdirectory).

Here is a list of variable names and their default values. (*PKGDIR* defaults to *\${MASTERDIR}*.)

Variable	Default value
DESCR	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-descr</i>
PLIST	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-plist</i>
PKGINSTALL	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-install</i>
PKGDEINSTALL	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-deinstall</i>
PKGREQ	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-req</i>
PKGMESSAGE	<i>\${PKGDIR}/pkg-message</i>

Please change these variables rather than overriding *PKG_ARGS*. If you change *PKG_ARGS*, those files will not correctly be installed in */var/db/pkg* upon install from a port.

8.6 Making Use of *SUB_FILES* and *SUB_LIST*

The *SUB_FILES* and *SUB_LIST* variables are useful for dynamic values in port files, such as the installation *PREFIX* in *pkg-message*.

The *SUB_FILES* variable specifies a list of files to be automatically modified. Each *file* in the *SUB_FILES* list must have a corresponding *file.in* present in *FILESDIR*. A modified version will be created in *WRKDIR*. Files defined as a value of *USE_RC_SUBR* (or the deprecated *USE_RCORDER*) are automatically added to the *SUB_FILES*. For the files *pkg-message*, *pkg-install*, *pkg-deinstall* and *pkg-req*, the corresponding Makefile variable is automatically set to point to the processed version.

The *SUB_LIST* variable is a list of *VAR=VALUE* pairs. For each pair *%%VAR%%* will get replaced with *VALUE* in each file listed in *SUB_FILES*. Several common pairs are automatically defined: *PREFIX*, *LOCALBASE*, *DATADIR*, *DOCSDIR*, *EXAMPLESDIR*, *WWWDIR*, and *ETCDIR*. Any line beginning with *@comment* will be deleted from resulting files after a variable substitution.

The following example will replace *%%ARCH%%* with the system architecture in a *pkg-message*:

```
SUB_FILES=      pkg-message
SUB_LIST=      ARCH=${ARCH}
```

Note that for this example, the `pkg-message.in` file must exist in `FILESDIR`.

Example of a good `pkg-message.in`:

Now it is time to configure this package.

Copy `%%PREFIX%%/share/examples/putsy/%%ARCH%%.conf` into your home directory as `.putsy.conf` and edit it.

Chapter 9 Testing Your Port

9.1 Running `make describe`

Several of the FreeBSD port maintenance tools, such as `portupgrade(1)`, rely on a database called `/usr/ports/INDEX` which keeps track of such items as port dependencies. `INDEX` is created by the top-level `ports/Makefile` via `make index`, which descends into each port subdirectory and executes `make describe` there. Thus, if `make describe` fails in any port, no one can generate `INDEX`, and many people will quickly become unhappy.

Note: It is important to be able to generate this file no matter what options are present in `make.conf`, so please avoid doing things such as using `.error` statements when (for instance) a dependency is not satisfied. (See Section 12.16.)

If `make describe` produces a string rather than an error message, you are probably safe. See `bsd.port.mk` for the meaning of the string produced.

Also note that running a recent version of `portlint` (as specified in the next section) will cause `make describe` to be run automatically.

9.2 Portlint

Do check your work with `portlint` before you submit or commit it. `portlint` warns you about many common errors, both functional and stylistic. For a new (or repocopied) port, `portlint -A` is the most thorough; for an existing port, `portlint -C` is sufficient.

Since `portlint` uses heuristics to try to figure out errors, it can produce false positive warnings. In addition, occasionally something that is flagged as a problem really cannot be done in any other way due to limitations in the ports framework. When in doubt, the best thing to do is ask on FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>).

9.3 Port Tools

The `ports-mgmt/porttools` program is part of the Ports Collection.

`port` is the front-end script, which can help you simplify the testing job. Whenever you want to test a new port or update an existing one, you can use `port test` to test your port, including the `portlint` checking. This command also detects and lists any files that are not listed in `pkg-plist`. See the following example:

```
# port test /usr/ports/net/csup
```

9.4 PREFIX and DESTDIR

`PREFIX` determines where the port will be installed. It defaults to `/usr/local`, but can be set by the user to a custom path like `/opt`. Your port must respect the value of this variable.

`DESTDIR`, if set by the user, determines the complete alternative environment, usually a jail or an installed system mounted somewhere other than `/`. A port will actually install into `DESTDIR/PREFIX`, and register with the package database in `DESTDIR/var/db/pkg`. As `DESTDIR` is handled automatically by the ports infrastructure with `chroot(8)`, you do not need any modifications or any extra care to write `DESTDIR`-compliant ports.

The value of `PREFIX` will be set to `LOCALBASE` (defaulting to `/usr/local`). If `USE_LINUX_PREFIX` is set, `PREFIX` will be `LINUXBASE` (defaulting to `/compat/linux`).

Avoiding hard-coded `/usr/local` paths in the source makes the port much more flexible and able to cater to the needs of other sites. Often, this can be accomplished by simply replacing occurrences of `/usr/local` in the port's various `Makefiles` with `${PREFIX}`. This variable is automatically passed down to every stage of the build and install processes.

Make sure your application is not installing things in `/usr/local` instead of `PREFIX`. A quick test for such hard-coded paths is:

```
# make clean; make package PREFIX=/var/tmp/`make -V PORTNAME`
```

If anything is installed outside of `PREFIX`, the package creation process will complain that it cannot find the files.

This test will not find hard-coded paths inside the port's files, nor will it verify that `LOCALBASE` is being used to correctly refer to files from other ports. The temporarily-installed port in `/var/tmp/`make -V PORTNAME`` should be tested for proper operation to make sure there are no problems with paths.

`PREFIX` should not be set explicitly in a port's `Makefile`. Users installing the port may have set `PREFIX` to a custom location, and the port should respect that setting.

Refer to programs and files from other ports with the variables mentioned above, not explicit pathnames. For instance, if your port requires a macro `PAGER` to have the full pathname of `less`, do not use a literal path of `/usr/local/bin/less`. Instead, use `${LOCALBASE}`:

```
-DPAGER="\${LOCALBASE}/bin/less"
```

The path with `LOCALBASE` is more likely to still work if the system administrator has moved the whole `/usr/local` tree somewhere else.

9.5 Tinderbox

If you are an avid ports contributor, you might want to take a look at **Tinderbox**. It is a powerful system for building and testing ports based on the scripts used on Pointyhat. You can install **Tinderbox** using `ports-mgmt/tinderbox` port. Be sure to read supplied documentation since the configuration is not trivial.

Visit the Tinderbox website (<http://tinderbox.marcuscom.com/>) for more details.

Chapter 10 Upgrading an Individual Port

When you notice that a port is out of date compared to the latest version from the original authors, you should first ensure that you have the latest port. You can find them in the `ports/ports-current` directory of the FreeBSD FTP mirror sites. However, if you are working with more than a few ports, you will probably find it easier to use **Subversion** or `portsnap(8)` to keep your whole ports collection up-to-date, as described in the Handbook (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/ports-using.html). This will have the added benefit of tracking all the ports' dependencies.

The next step is to see if there is an update already pending. To do this, you have two options. There is a searchable interface to the FreeBSD Problem Report (PR) database (<http://www.FreeBSD.org/cgi/query-pr-summary.cgi?query>) (also known as GNATS). Select `ports` in the dropdown, and enter the name of the port.

However, sometimes people forget to put the name of the port into the Synopsis field in an unambiguous fashion. In that case, you can try the FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System (also known as `portsmon`). This system attempts to classify port PRs by portname. To search for PRs about a particular port, use the Overview of One Port (<http://portsmon.FreeBSD.org/portoverview.py>).

If there is no pending PR, the next step is to send an email to the port's maintainer, as shown by `make maintainer`. That person may already be working on an upgrade, or have a reason to not upgrade the port right now (because of, for example, stability problems of the new version); you would not want to duplicate their work. Note that unmaintained ports are listed with a maintainer of `ports@FreeBSD.org`, which is just the general ports mailing list, so sending mail there probably will not help in this case.

If the maintainer asks you to do the upgrade or there is no maintainer, then you have a chance to help out FreeBSD by preparing the update yourself! Please do this by using the `diff(1)` command in the base system.

To create a suitable `diff` for a single patch, copy the file that needs patching to *something.orig*, save your changes to *something* and then create your patch:

```
% diff -u something.orig something > something.diff
```

Otherwise, you should either use the `svn diff` method (Section 10.1) or copy the contents of the port to an entire different directory and use the result of the recursive `diff(1)` output of the new and old ports directories (e.g., if your modified port directory is called *superedit* and the original is in our tree as *superedit.bak*, then save the result of `diff -rUn superedit.bak superedit`). Either unified or context diff is fine, but port committers generally prefer unified diffs. Note the use of the `-N` option—this is the accepted way to force diff to properly deal with the case of new files being added or old files being deleted. Before sending us the diff, please examine the output to make sure all the changes make sense. (In particular, make sure you first clean out the work directories with `make clean`).

To simplify common operations with patch files, you can use `/usr/ports/Tools/scripts/patchtool.py`. Before using it, please read `/usr/ports/Tools/scripts/README.patchtool`.

If the port is unmaintained, and you are actively using it yourself, please consider volunteering to become its maintainer. FreeBSD has over 4000 ports without maintainers, and this is an area where more volunteers are always needed. (For a detailed description of the responsibilities of maintainers, refer to the section in the Developer's Handbook (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/developers-handbook/policies.html#POLICIES-MAINTAINER).)

The best way to send us the diff is by including it via `send-pr(1)` (category `ports`). If you are maintaining the port, be sure to put `[maintainer update]` at the beginning of your synopsis line and set the "Class" of your PR to `maintainer-update`. Otherwise, the "Class" of your PR should be `change-request`. Please mention any added

or deleted files in the message, as they have to be explicitly specified to `svn(1)` when doing a commit. If the diff is more than about 20KB, please compress and uuencode it; otherwise, just include it in the PR as is.

Before you send-pr(1), you should review the Writing the problem report (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/problem-reports/pr-writing.html) section in the Problem Reports article; it contains far more information about how to write useful problem reports.

Important: If your upgrade is motivated by security concerns or a serious fault in the currently committed port, please notify the Ports Management Team <portmgr@FreeBSD.org> to request immediate rebuilding and redistribution of your port's package. Unsuspecting users of `pkg_add(1)` will otherwise continue to install the old version via `pkg_add -r` for several weeks.

Note: Once again, please use `diff(1)` and not `shar(1)` to send updates to existing ports! This helps ports committers understand exactly what is being changed.

Now that you have done all that, you will want to read about how to keep up-to-date in Chapter 14.

10.1 Using `svn` to Make Patches

If you can, please submit a `svn(1)` diff — they are easier to handle than diffs between “new and old” directories. Plus it is easier for you to see what you have changed and to update your diff if something is modified in the Ports Collection from when you started to work on it until you submit your changes, or if the committer asks you to fix something.

```
% cd ~/my_wrkdir ❶
% svn co https://svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/dns/pdnsd ❷
% cd ~/my_wrkdir/pdnsd
```

- ❶ This can be anywhere you want, of course; building ports is not limited to within `/usr/ports/`.
- ❷ `svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org` (<https://svn0.us-west.FreeBSD.org/>) is a public `SVN` server. Select the closest mirror and verify the mirror server certificate from the list of Subversion mirror sites (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/svn-mirrors.html).

While in the working directory, make any changes that you would usually make to the port. If you add or remove a file, use `svn` to track these changes:

```
% svn add new_file
% svn remove deleted_file
```

Make sure that you check the port using the checklist in Section 3.4 and Section 3.5.

```
% svn status
% svn update ❶
```

- ❶ This will try to merge the differences between your patch and current `SVN`; watch the output carefully. The letter in front of each file name indicates what was done with it. See Table 10-1 for a complete list.

Table 10-1. svn Update File Prefixes

U	The file was updated without problems.
G	The file was updated without problems (you will only see this when working against a remote repository).
M	The file had been modified, and was merged without conflicts.
C	The file had been modified, and was merged with conflicts.

If you get C as a result of `svn update` it means something changed in the SVN repository and `svn(1)` was not able to merge your local changes and those from the repository. It is always a good idea to inspect the changes anyway, since `svn(1)` does not know anything about how a port should be, so it might (and probably will) merge things that do not make sense.

The last step is to make a unified diff(1) of the files against SVN:

```
% svn diff > ../`basename ${PWD}`.diff
```

Note: Any files that have been removed should be explicitly mentioned in the PR, because file removal may not be obvious to the committer.

Send your patch following the guidelines in Chapter 10.

10.2 The Files UPDATING and MOVED

If upgrading the port requires special steps like changing configuration files or running a specific program, you should document this in the file `/usr/ports/UPDATING`. The format of an entry in this file is as follows:

```
YYYYMMDD:
  AFFECTS: users of portcategory/portname
  AUTHOR: Your name <Your email address>

  Special instructions
```

If you are including exact portmaster or portupgrading instructions, please make sure to get the shell escaping right.

The `/usr/ports/MOVED` file is used to list moved or removed ports. Each line in the file is made up of the name of the port, where the port was moved to, when, and why. If the port was removed, the section detailing where it was moved to can be left blank. Each section must be separated by the `|` (pipe) character, like so:

```
old name|new name (blank for deleted)|date of move|reason
```

The date should be entered in the form `YYYY-MM-DD`. New entries should be added to the end of the file to keep it in chronological order.

If a port was removed but has since been restored, delete the line in this file that states that it was removed.

The changes can be validated with `Tools/scripts/MOVEDlint.awk`.

Chapter 11 Ports Security

11.1 Why Security is So Important

Bugs are occasionally introduced to the software. Arguably, the most dangerous of them are those opening security vulnerabilities. From the technical viewpoint, such vulnerabilities are to be closed by exterminating the bugs that caused them. However, the policies for handling mere bugs and security vulnerabilities are very different.

A typical small bug affects only those users who have enabled some combination of options triggering the bug. The developer will eventually release a patch followed by a new version of the software, free of the bug, but the majority of users will not take the trouble of upgrading immediately because the bug has never vexed them. A critical bug that may cause data loss represents a graver issue. Nevertheless, prudent users know that a lot of possible accidents, besides software bugs, are likely to lead to data loss, and so they make backups of important data; in addition, a critical bug will be discovered really soon.

A security vulnerability is all different. First, it may remain unnoticed for years because often it does not cause software malfunction. Second, a malicious party can use it to gain unauthorized access to a vulnerable system, to destroy or alter sensitive data; and in the worst case the user will not even notice the harm caused. Third, exposing a vulnerable system often assists attackers to break into other systems that could not be compromised otherwise. Therefore closing a vulnerability alone is not enough: the audience should be notified of it in most clear and comprehensive manner, which will allow to evaluate the danger and take appropriate actions.

11.2 Fixing Security Vulnerabilities

While on the subject of ports and packages, a security vulnerability may initially appear in the original distribution or in the port files. In the former case, the original software developer is likely to release a patch or a new version instantly, and you will only need to update the port promptly with respect to the author's fix. If the fix is delayed for some reason, you should either mark the port as `FORBIDDEN` or introduce a patch file of your own to the port. In the case of a vulnerable port, just fix the port as soon as possible. In either case, the standard procedure for submitting your change should be followed unless you have rights to commit it directly to the ports tree.

Important: Being a ports committer is not enough to commit to an arbitrary port. Remember that ports usually have maintainers, whom you should respect.

Please make sure that the port's revision is bumped as soon as the vulnerability has been closed. That is how the users who upgrade installed packages on a regular basis will see they need to run an update. Besides, a new package will be built and distributed over FTP and WWW mirrors, replacing the vulnerable one. `PORTREVISION` should be bumped unless `PORTVERSION` has changed in the course of correcting the vulnerability. That is you should bump `PORTREVISION` if you have added a patch file to the port, but you should not if you have updated the port to the latest software version and thus already touched `PORTVERSION`. Please refer to the corresponding section for more information.

11.3 Keeping the Community Informed

11.3.1 The VuXML Database

A very important and urgent step to take as early after a security vulnerability is discovered as possible is to notify the community of port users about the jeopardy. Such notification serves two purposes. First, should the danger be really severe it will be wise to apply an instant workaround. E.g., stop the affected network service or even deinstall the port completely until the vulnerability is closed. Second, a lot of users tend to upgrade installed packages only occasionally. They will know from the notification that they *must* update the package without delay as soon as a corrected version is available.

Given the huge number of ports in the tree a security advisory cannot be issued on each incident without creating a flood and losing the attention of the audience when it comes to really serious matters. Therefore security vulnerabilities found in ports are recorded in the FreeBSD VuXML database (<http://vuxml.freebsd.org/>). The Security Officer Team members also monitor it for issues requiring their intervention.

If you have committer rights you can update the VuXML database by yourself. So you will both help the Security Officer Team and deliver the crucial information to the community earlier. However, if you are not a committer, or you believe you have found an exceptionally severe vulnerability please do not hesitate to contact the Security Officer Team directly as described on the FreeBSD Security Information (<http://www.freebsd.org/security/#how>) page.

The VuXML database is an XML document. Its source file `vuln.xml` is kept right inside the port `security/vuxml`. Therefore the file's full pathname will be `PORTSDIR/security/vuxml/vuln.xml`. Each time you discover a security vulnerability in a port please add an entry for it to that file. Until you are familiar with VuXML, the best thing you can do is to find an existing entry fitting your case, then copy it and use it as a template.

11.3.2 A Short Introduction to VuXML

The full-blown XML format is complex, and far beyond the scope of this book. However, to gain basic insight on the structure of a VuXML entry you need only the notion of tags. XML tag names are enclosed in angle brackets. Each opening `<tag>` must have a matching closing `</tag>`. Tags may be nested. If nesting, the inner tags must be closed before the outer ones. There is a hierarchy of tags, i.e., more complex rules of nesting them. This is similar to HTML. The major difference is that XML is eXtensible, i.e., based on defining custom tags. Due to its intrinsic structure XML puts otherwise amorphous data into shape. VuXML is particularly tailored to mark up descriptions of security vulnerabilities.

Now consider a realistic VuXML entry:

```
<vuln vid="f4bc80f4-da62-11d8-90ea-0004ac98a7b9"> ❶
  <topic>Several vulnerabilities found in Foo</topic> ❷
  <affects>
    <package>
      <name>foo</name> ❸
      <name>foo-devel</name>
      <name>ja-foo</name>
      <range><ge>1.6</ge><lt>1.9</lt></range> ❹
      <range><ge>2.*</ge><lt>2.4_1</lt></range>
      <range><eq>3.0b1</eq></range>
    </package>
    <package>
      <name>openfoo</name> ❺
```

```

    <range><lt>1.10_7</lt></range> ❹
    <range><ge>1.2,1</ge><lt>1.3_1,1</lt></range>
  </package>
</affects>
<description>
  <body xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
    <p>J. Random Hacker reports:</p> ❺
    <blockquote
      cite="http://j.r.hacker.com/advisories/1">
        <p>Several issues in the Foo software may be exploited
          via carefully crafted QUUX requests. These requests will
          permit the injection of Bar code, mumble theft, and the
          readability of the Foo administrator account.</p>
      </blockquote>
    </body>
  </description>
<references> ❻
  <freebsdsv>SA-10:75.foo</freebsdsv> ❸
  <freebsdpr>ports/987654</freebsdpr> (10)
  <cvename>CAN-2010-0201</cvename> (11)
  <cvename>CAN-2010-0466</cvename>
  <bid>96298</bid> (12)
  <certsa>CA-2010-99</certsa> (13)
  <certvu>740169</certvu> (14)
  <uscertsa>SA10-99A</uscertsa> (15)
  <uscertta>SA10-99A</uscertta> (16)
  <mlist msgid="201075606@hacker.com">http://marc.theaimsgroup.com/?l=bugtraq&m=20388660782560
  <url>http://j.r.hacker.com/advisories/1</url> (18)
</references>
<dates>
  <discovery>2010-05-25</discovery> (19)
  <entry>2010-07-13</entry> (20)
  <modified>2010-09-17</modified> (21)
</dates>
</vuln>

```

The tag names are supposed to be self-explanatory so we shall take a closer look only at fields you will need to fill in by yourself:

- ❶ This is the top-level tag of a VuXML entry. It has a mandatory attribute, `vid`, specifying a universally unique identifier (UUID) for this entry (in quotes). You should generate a UUID for each new VuXML entry (and do not forget to substitute it for the template UUID unless you are writing the entry from scratch). You can use `uuidgen(1)` to generate a VuXML UUID.
- ❷ This is a one-line description of the issue found.
- ❸ The names of packages affected are listed there. Multiple names can be given since several packages may be based on a single master port or software product. This may include stable and development branches, localized versions, and slave ports featuring different choices of important build-time configuration options.

Important: It is your responsibility to find all such related packages when writing a VuXML entry. Keep in mind that `make search name=foo` is your friend. The primary points to look for are as follows:

- the `foo-devel` variant for a `foo` port;
 - other variants with a suffix like `-a4` (for print-related packages), `-without-gui` (for packages with X support disabled), or similar;
 - `jp-`, `ru-`, `zh-`, and other possible localized variants in the corresponding national categories of the ports collection.
- ④ Affected versions of the package(s) are specified there as one or more ranges using a combination of `<lt>`, `<le>`, `<eq>`, `<ge>`, and `<gt>` elements. The version ranges given should not overlap.
- In a range specification, `*` (asterisk) denotes the smallest version number. In particular, `2.*` is less than `2.a`. Therefore an asterisk may be used for a range to match all possible `alpha`, `beta`, and `RC` versions. For instance, `<ge>2.*</ge><lt>3.*</lt>` will selectively match every `2.x` version while `<ge>2.0</ge><lt>3.0</lt>` will not since the latter misses `2.r3` and matches `3.b`.
- The above example specifies that affected are versions from `1.6` to `1.9` inclusive, versions `2.x` before `2.4_1`, and version `3.0b1`.
- ⑤ Several related package groups (essentially, ports) can be listed in the `<affected>` section. This can be used if several software products (say `FooBar`, `FreeBar` and `OpenBar`) grow from the same code base and still share its bugs and vulnerabilities. Note the difference from listing multiple names within a single `<package>` section.
- ⑥ The version ranges should allow for `PORTEPOCH` and `PORTREVISION` if applicable. Please remember that according to the collation rules, a version with a non-zero `PORTEPOCH` is greater than any version without `PORTEPOCH`, e.g., `3.0,1` is greater than `3.1` or even than `8.9`.
- ⑦ This is a summary of the issue. XHTML is used in this field. At least enclosing `<p>` and `</p>` should appear. More complex mark-up may be used, but only for the sake of accuracy and clarity: No eye candy please.
- ⑧ This section contains references to relevant documents. As many references as apply are encouraged.
- ⑨ This is a FreeBSD security advisory (<http://www.freebsd.org/security/#adv>).
- (10) This is a FreeBSD problem report (<http://www.freebsd.org/support.html#gnats>).
- (11) This is a MITRE CVE (<http://www.cve.mitre.org/>) identifier.
- (12) This is a SecurityFocus Bug ID (<http://www.securityfocus.com/bid>).
- (13) This is a US-CERT (<http://www.cert.org/>) security advisory.
- (14) This is a US-CERT (<http://www.cert.org/>) vulnerability note.
- (15) This is a US-CERT (<http://www.cert.org/>) Cyber Security Alert.
- (16) This is a US-CERT (<http://www.cert.org/>) Technical Cyber Security Alert.
- (17) This is a URL to an archived posting in a mailing list. The attribute `msgid` is optional and may specify the message ID of the posting.
- (18) This is a generic URL. It should be used only if none of the other reference categories apply.
- (19) This is the date when the issue was disclosed (`YYYY-MM-DD`).
- (20) This is the date when the entry was added (`YYYY-MM-DD`).
- (21) This is the date when any information in the entry was last modified (`YYYY-MM-DD`). New entries must not include this field. It should be added upon editing an existing entry.

11.3.3 Testing Your Changes to the VuXML Database

Assume you just wrote or filled in an entry for a vulnerability in the package `clamav` that has been fixed in version `0.65_7`.

As a prerequisite, you need to *install* fresh versions of the ports `ports-mgmt/portaudit`, `ports-mgmt/portaudit-db`, and `security/vuxml`.

Note: To run `packaudit` you must have permission to write to its `DATABASEDIR`, typically `/var/db/portaudit`.

To use a different directory set the `DATABASEDIR` environment variable to a different location.

If you are working in a directory other than `${PORTSDIR}/security/vuxml` set the `VUXMLDIR` environment variable to the directory where `vuln.xml` is located.

First, check whether there already is an entry for this vulnerability. If there were such an entry, it would match the previous version of the package, `0.65_6`:

```
% packaudit
% portaudit clamav-0.65_6
```

If there is none found, you have the green light to add a new entry for this vulnerability.

```
% cd ${PORTSDIR}/security/vuxml
% make newentry
```

When you are done verify its syntax and formatting.

```
% make validate
```

Note: You will need at least one of the following packages installed: `textproc/libxml2`, `textproc/jade`.

Now rebuild the `portaudit` database from the VuXML file:

```
% packaudit
```

To verify that the `<affected>` section of your entry will match correct package(s), issue the following command:

```
% portaudit -f /usr/ports/INDEX -r uuid
```

Note: Please refer to `portaudit(1)` for better understanding of the command syntax.

Make sure that your entry produces no spurious matches in the output.

Now check whether the right package versions are matched by your entry:

```
% portaudit clamav-0.65_6 clamav-0.65_7
Affected package: clamav-0.65_6 (matched by clamav<0.65_7)
Type of problem: clamav remote denial-of-service.
Reference: <http://www.freebsd.org/ports/portaudit/74a9541d-5d6c-11d8-80e3-0020ed76ef5a.html>
```

```
1 problem(s) found.
```

The former version should match while the latter one should not.

Finally, verify whether the web page generated from the VuXML database looks like expected:

```
% mkdir -p ~/public_html/portaudit
% packaudit
% lynx ~/public_html/portaudit/74a9541d-5d6c-11d8-80e3-0020ed76ef5a.html
```

Chapter 12 Dos and Don'ts

12.1 Introduction

Here is a list of common dos and don'ts that you encounter during the porting process. You should check your own port against this list, but you can also check ports in the PR database (<http://www.FreeBSD.org/cgi/query-pr-summary.cgi?query>) that others have submitted. Submit any comments on ports you check as described in Bug Reports and General Commentary (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/articles/contributing/contrib-how.html#CONTRIB-GENERAL). Checking ports in the PR database will both make it faster for us to commit them, and prove that you know what you are doing.

12.2 WRKDIR

Do not write anything to files outside `WRKDIR`. `WRKDIR` is the only place that is guaranteed to be writable during the port build (see installing ports from a CDROM (http://www.FreeBSD.org/doc/en_US.ISO8859-1/books/handbook/ports-using.html#PORTS-CD) for an example of building ports from a read-only tree). If you need to modify one of the `pkg-*` files, do so by redefining a variable, not by writing over it.

12.3 WRKDIRPREFIX

Make sure your port honors `WRKDIRPREFIX`. Most ports do not have to worry about this. In particular, if you are referring to a `WRKDIR` of another port, note that the correct location is `WRKDIRPREFIXPORTSDIR/subdir/name/work` not `PORTSDIR/subdir/name/work` or `.CURDIR/../../subdir/name/work` or some such.

Also, if you are defining `WRKDIR` yourself, make sure you prepend `${WRKDIRPREFIX}${.CURDIR}` in the front.

12.4 Differentiating Operating Systems and OS Versions

You may come across code that needs modifications or conditional compilation based upon what version of Unix it is running under. If you need to make such changes to the code for conditional compilation, make sure you make the changes as general as possible so that we can back-port code to older FreeBSD systems and cross-port to other BSD systems such as 4.4BSD from CSRG, BSD/386, 386BSD, NetBSD, and OpenBSD.

The preferred way to tell 4.3BSD/Reno (1990) and newer versions of the BSD code apart is by using the `BSD` macro defined in `sys/param.h` (<http://svnweb.freebsd.org/base/head/sys/sys/param.h?view=markup>). Hopefully that file is already included; if not, add the code:

```
#if (defined(__unix__) || defined(unix)) && !defined(USG)
#include <sys/param.h>
#endif
```


to the proper place in the `.c` file. We believe that every system that defines these two symbols has `sys/param.h`. If you find a system that does not, we would like to know. Please send mail to the FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>).

Another way is to use the GNU Autoconf style of doing this:

```
#ifdef HAVE_SYS_PARAM_H
#include <sys/param.h>
#endif
```

Do not forget to add `-DHAVE_SYS_PARAM_H` to the `CFLAGS` in the Makefile for this method.

Once you have `sys/param.h` included, you may use:

```
#if (defined(BSD) && (BSD >= 199103))
```

to detect if the code is being compiled on a 4.3 Net2 code base or newer (e.g., FreeBSD 1.x, 4.3/Reno, NetBSD 0.9, 386BSD, BSD/386 1.1 and below).

Use:

```
#if (defined(BSD) && (BSD >= 199306))
```

to detect if the code is being compiled on a 4.4 code base or newer (e.g., FreeBSD 2.x, 4.4, NetBSD 1.0, BSD/386 2.0 or above).

The value of the `BSD` macro is 199506 for the 4.4BSD-Lite2 code base. This is stated for informational purposes only. It should not be used to distinguish between versions of FreeBSD based only on 4.4-Lite versus versions that have merged in changes from 4.4-Lite2. The `__FreeBSD__` macro should be used instead.

Use sparingly:

- `__FreeBSD__` is defined in all versions of FreeBSD. Use it if the change you are making *only* affects FreeBSD. Porting gotchas like the use of `sys_errlist[]` versus `strerror()` are Berkeley-isms, not FreeBSD changes.
- In FreeBSD 2.x, `__FreeBSD__` is defined to be 2. In earlier versions, it is 1. Later versions always bump it to match their major version number.
- If you need to tell the difference between a FreeBSD 1.x system and a FreeBSD 2.x or above system, usually the right answer is to use the `BSD` macros described above. If there actually is a FreeBSD specific change (such as special shared library options when using `ld`) then it is OK to use `__FreeBSD__` and `#if __FreeBSD__ > 1` to detect a FreeBSD 2.x and later system. If you need more granularity in detecting FreeBSD systems since 2.0-RELEASE you can use the following:

```
#if __FreeBSD__ >= 2
#include <osreldate.h>
#   if __FreeBSD_version >= 199504
        /* 2.0.5+ release specific code here */
#   endif
#endif
```

In the hundreds of ports that have been done, there have only been one or two cases where `__FreeBSD__` should have been used. Just because an earlier port screwed up and used it in the wrong place does not mean you should do so too.

12.5 __FreeBSD_version Values

Here is a convenient list of __FreeBSD_version values as defined in sys/param.h (<http://svnweb.FreeBSD.org/base/head/sys/sys/param.h?view=markup>):

Table 12-1. __FreeBSD_version Values

Value	Date	Release
119411		2.0-RELEASE
199501, 199503	March 19, 1995	2.1-CURRENT
199504	April 9, 1995	2.0.5-RELEASE
199508	August 26, 1995	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1
199511	November 10, 1995	2.1.0-RELEASE
199512	November 10, 1995	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1.5
199607	July 10, 1996	2.1.5-RELEASE
199608	July 12, 1996	2.2-CURRENT before 2.1.6
199612	November 15, 1996	2.1.6-RELEASE
199612		2.1.7-RELEASE
220000	February 19, 1997	2.2-RELEASE
(not changed)		2.2.1-RELEASE
(not changed)		2.2-STABLE after 2.2.1-RELEASE
221001	April 15, 1997	2.2-STABLE after texinfo-3.9
221002	April 30, 1997	2.2-STABLE after top
222000	May 16, 1997	2.2.2-RELEASE
222001	May 19, 1997	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.2-RELEASE
225000	October 2, 1997	2.2.5-RELEASE
225001	November 20, 1997	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.5-RELEASE
225002	December 27, 1997	2.2-STABLE after ldconfig -R merge
226000	March 24, 1998	2.2.6-RELEASE
227000	July 21, 1998	2.2.7-RELEASE
227001	July 21, 1998	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.7-RELEASE
227002	September 19, 1998	2.2-STABLE after semctl(2) change
228000	November 29, 1998	2.2.8-RELEASE
228001	November 29, 1998	2.2-STABLE after 2.2.8-RELEASE
300000	February 19, 1996	3.0-CURRENT before mount(2) change
300001	September 24, 1997	3.0-CURRENT after mount(2) change
300002	June 2, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after semctl(2) change
300003	June 7, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after ioctl arg changes

Value	Date	Release
300004	September 3, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after ELF conversion
300005	October 16, 1998	3.0-RELEASE
300006	October 16, 1998	3.0-CURRENT after 3.0-RELEASE
300007	January 22, 1999	3.0-STABLE after 3/4 branch
310000	February 9, 1999	3.1-RELEASE
310001	March 27, 1999	3.1-STABLE after 3.1-RELEASE
310002	April 14, 1999	3.1-STABLE after C++ constructor/destructor order change
320000		3.2-RELEASE
320001	May 8, 1999	3.2-STABLE
320002	August 29, 1999	3.2-STABLE after binary-incompatible IPFW and socket changes
330000	September 2, 1999	3.3-RELEASE
330001	September 16, 1999	3.3-STABLE
330002	November 24, 1999	3.3-STABLE after adding mkstemp(3) to libc
340000	December 5, 1999	3.4-RELEASE
340001	December 17, 1999	3.4-STABLE
350000	June 20, 2000	3.5-RELEASE
350001	July 12, 2000	3.5-STABLE
400000	January 22, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after 3.4 branch
400001	February 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after change in dynamic linker handling
400002	March 13, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after C++ constructor/destructor order change
400003	March 27, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after functioning dladdr(3)
400004	April 5, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after __deregister_frame_info dynamic linker bug fix (also 4.0-CURRENT after EGCS 1.1.2 integration)
400005	April 27, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after suser(9) API change (also 4.0-CURRENT after newbus)
400006	May 31, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after cdevsw registration change
400007	June 17, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the addition of so_cred for socket level credentials
400008	June 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the addition of a poll syscall wrapper to libc_r

Value	Date	Release
400009	July 20, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the change of the kernel's <code>dev_t</code> type to <code>struct specinfo</code> pointer
400010	September 25, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after fixing a hole in <code>jail(2)</code>
400011	September 29, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the <code>sigset_t</code> datatype change
400012	November 15, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after the cutover to the GCC 2.95.2 compiler
400013	December 4, 1999	4.0-CURRENT after adding pluggable linux-mode <code>ioctl</code> handlers
400014	January 18, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after importing OpenSSL
400015	January 27, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after the C++ ABI change in GCC 2.95.2 from <code>-fvtbl-thunks</code> to <code>-fno-vtbl-thunks</code> by default
400016	February 27, 2000	4.0-CURRENT after importing OpenSSH
400017	March 13, 2000	4.0-RELEASE
400018	March 17, 2000	4.0-STABLE after 4.0-RELEASE
400019	May 5, 2000	4.0-STABLE after the introduction of delayed checksums.
400020	June 4, 2000	4.0-STABLE after merging <code>libxpg4</code> code into <code>libc</code> .
400021	July 8, 2000	4.0-STABLE after upgrading <code>Binutils</code> to 2.10.0, ELF branding changes, and <code>tcsh</code> in the base system.
410000	July 14, 2000	4.1-RELEASE
410001	July 29, 2000	4.1-STABLE after 4.1-RELEASE
410002	September 16, 2000	4.1-STABLE after <code>setproctitle(3)</code> moved from <code>libutil</code> to <code>libc</code> .
411000	September 25, 2000	4.1.1-RELEASE
411001		4.1.1-STABLE after 4.1.1-RELEASE
420000	October 31, 2000	4.2-RELEASE
420001	January 10, 2001	4.2-STABLE after combining <code>libgcc.a</code> and <code>libgcc_r.a</code> , and associated GCC linkage changes.
430000	March 6, 2001	4.3-RELEASE
430001	May 18, 2001	4.3-STABLE after <code>wint_t</code> introduction.

Value	Date	Release
430002	July 22, 2001	4.3-STABLE after PCI powerstate API merge.
440000	August 1, 2001	4.4-RELEASE
440001	October 23, 2001	4.4-STABLE after d_thread_t introduction.
440002	November 4, 2001	4.4-STABLE after mount structure changes (affects filesystem klds).
440003	December 18, 2001	4.4-STABLE after the userland components of smbfs were imported.
450000	December 20, 2001	4.5-RELEASE
450001	February 24, 2002	4.5-STABLE after the usb structure element rename.
450004	April 16, 2002	4.5-STABLE after the <code>sendmail_enable rc.conf(5)</code> variable was made to take the value <code>NONE</code> .
450005	April 27, 2002	4.5-STABLE after moving to XFree86 4 by default for package builds.
450006	May 1, 2002	4.5-STABLE after accept filtering was fixed so that is no longer susceptible to an easy DoS.
460000	June 21, 2002	4.6-RELEASE
460001	June 21, 2002	4.6-STABLE <code>sendfile(2)</code> fixed to comply with documentation, not to count any headers sent against the amount of data to be sent from the file.
460002	July 19, 2002	4.6.2-RELEASE
460100	June 26, 2002	4.6-STABLE
460101	June 26, 2002	4.6-STABLE after MFC of 'sed -i'.
460102	September 1, 2002	4.6-STABLE after MFC of many new <code>pkg_install</code> features from the HEAD.
470000	October 8, 2002	4.7-RELEASE
470100	October 9, 2002	4.7-STABLE
470101	November 10, 2002	Start generated <code>__std{in,out,err}</code> p references rather than <code>__sF</code> . This changes <code>std{in,out,err}</code> from a compile time expression to a runtime one.

Value	Date	Release
470102	January 23, 2003	4.7-STABLE after MFC of mbuf changes to replace m_aux mbufs by m_tag's
470103	February 14, 2003	4.7-STABLE gets OpenSSL 0.9.7
480000	March 30, 2003	4.8-RELEASE
480100	April 5, 2003	4.8-STABLE
480101	May 22, 2003	4.8-STABLE after realpath(3) has been made thread-safe
480102	August 10, 2003	4.8-STABLE 3ware API changes to twe.
490000	October 27, 2003	4.9-RELEASE
490100	October 27, 2003	4.9-STABLE
490101	January 8, 2004	4.9-STABLE after e_sid was added to struct kinfo_eproc.
490102	February 4, 2004	4.9-STABLE after MFC of libmap functionality for rtld.
491000	May 25, 2004	4.10-RELEASE
491100	June 1, 2004	4.10-STABLE
491101	August 11, 2004	4.10-STABLE after MFC of revision 20040629 of the package tools
491102	November 16, 2004	4.10-STABLE after VM fix dealing with unwiring of fictitious pages
492000	December 17, 2004	4.11-RELEASE
492100	December 17, 2004	4.11-STABLE
492101	April 18, 2006	4.11-STABLE after adding libdata/ldconfig directories tomtree files.
500000	March 13, 2000	5.0-CURRENT
500001	April 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after adding addition ELF header fields, and changing our ELF binary branding method.
500002	May 2, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after kld metadata changes.
500003	May 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after buf/bio changes.
500004	May 26, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after binutils upgrade.
500005	June 3, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after merging libxpg4 code into libc and after TASKQ interface introduction.
500006	June 10, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of AGP interfaces.

Value	Date	Release
500007	June 29, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after Perl upgrade to 5.6.0
500008	July 7, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the update of KAME code to 2000/07 sources.
500009	July 14, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after ether_ifattach() and ether_ifdetach() changes.
500010	July 16, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after changing mtree defaults back to original variant, adding -L to follow symlinks.
500011	July 18, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after kqueue API changed.
500012	September 2, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after setproctitle(3) moved from libutil to libc.
500013	September 10, 2000	5.0-CURRENT after the first SMPng commit.
500014	January 4, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after <sys/select.h> moved to <sys/selinfo.h>.
500015	January 10, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after combining libgcc.a and libgcc_r.a, and associated GCC linkage changes.
500016	January 24, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after change allowing libc and libc_r to be linked together, deprecating -pthread option.
500017	February 18, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after switch from struct ucred to struct xucred to stabilize kernel-exported API for mountd et al.
500018	February 24, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after addition of CPUTYPE make variable for controlling CPU-specific optimizations.
500019	June 9, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after moving machine/ioctl_fd.h to sys/fdcio.h
500020	June 15, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after locale names renaming.
500021	June 22, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after Bzip2 import. Also signifies removal of S/Key.
500022	July 12, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after SSE support.
500023	September 14, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after KSE Milestone 2.
500024	October 1, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after d_thread_t, and moving UUCP to ports.

Value	Date	Release
500025	October 4, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after ABI change for descriptor and creds passing on 64 bit platforms.
500026	October 9, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after moving to XFree86 4 by default for package builds, and after the new libc strnstr() function was added.
500027	October 10, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after the new libc strcasestr() function was added.
500028	December 14, 2001	5.0-CURRENT after the userland components of smbfs were imported.
(not changed)		5.0-CURRENT after the new C99 specific-width integer types were added.
500029	January 29, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after a change was made in the return value of sendfile(2).
500030	February 15, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the type <code>fflags_t</code> , which is the appropriate size for file flags.
500031	February 24, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the usb structure element rename.
500032	March 16, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the introduction of Perl 5.6.1.
500033	April 3, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the <code>sendmail_enable rc.conf(5)</code> variable was made to take the value <code>NONE</code> .
500034	April 30, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after <code>mtx_init()</code> grew a third argument.
500035	May 13, 2002	5.0-CURRENT with Gcc 3.1.
500036	May 17, 2002	5.0-CURRENT without Perl in <code>/usr/src</code>
500037	May 29, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>dlfunc(3)</code>
500038	July 24, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the types of some struct <code>sockbuf</code> members were changed and the structure was reordered.

Value	Date	Release
500039	September 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after GCC 3.2.1 import. Also after headers stopped using <code>_BSD_FOO_T_</code> and started using <code>_FOO_T_DECLARED</code> . This value can also be used as a conservative estimate of the start of bzip2(1) package support.
500040	September 20, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after various changes to disk functions were made in the name of removing dependency on disklabel structure internals.
500041	October 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>getopt_long(3)</code> to libc.
500042	October 15, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after Binutils 2.13 upgrade, which included new FreeBSD emulation, vec, and output format.
500043	November 1, 2002	5.0-CURRENT after adding weak <code>pthread_XXX</code> stubs to libc, obsoleting <code>libXThrStub.so</code> . 5.0-RELEASE.
500100	January 17, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after branching for <code>RELENG_5_0</code>
500101	February 19, 2003	<code><sys/dkstat.h></code> is empty and should not be included.
500102	February 25, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after the <code>d_mmap_t</code> interface change.
500103	February 26, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after <code>taskqueue_swi</code> changed to run without Giant, and <code>taskqueue_swi_giant</code> added to run with Giant.
500104	February 27, 2003	<code>cdevsw_add()</code> and <code>cdevsw_remove()</code> no longer exists. Appearance of <code>MAJOR_AUTO</code> allocation facility.
500105	March 4, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after new <code>cdevsw</code> initialization method.
500106	March 8, 2003	<code>devstat_add_entry()</code> has been replaced by <code>devstat_new_entry()</code>
500107	March 15, 2003	Devstat interface change; see <code>sys/sys/param.h</code> 1.149
500108	March 15, 2003	Token-Ring interface changes.
500109	March 25, 2003	Addition of <code>vm_paddr_t</code> .
500110	March 28, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after <code>realpath(3)</code> has been made thread-safe

Value	Date	Release
500111	April 9, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after usbhid(3) has been synced with NetBSD
500112	April 17, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after new NSS implementation and addition of POSIX.1 getpw*_r, getgr*_r functions
500113	May 2, 2003	5.0-CURRENT after removal of the old rc system.
501000	June 4, 2003	5.1-RELEASE.
501100	June 2, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after branching for RELENG_5_1.
501101	June 29, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after correcting the semantics of sigtimedwait(2) and sigwaitinfo(2).
501102	July 3, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding the lockfunc and lockfuncarg fields to bus_dma_tag_create(9).
501103	July 31, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after GCC 3.3.1-pre 20030711 snapshot integration.
501104	August 5, 2003	5.1-CURRENT 3ware API changes to two.
501105	August 17, 2003	5.1-CURRENT dynamically-linked /bin and /sbin support and movement of libraries to /lib.
501106	September 8, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kernel support for Coda 6.x.
501107	September 17, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after 16550 UART constants moved from <dev/sio/sioreg.h> to <dev/ic/ns16550.h>. Also when libmap functionality was unconditionally supported by rtld.
501108	September 23, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after PFIL_HOOKS API update
501109	September 27, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kiconv(3)
501110	September 28, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changing default operations for open and close in cdevsw
501111	October 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changed layout of cdevsw
501112	October 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after adding kobj multiple inheritance

Value	Date	Release
501113	October 31, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after the if_xname change in struct ifnet
501114	November 16, 2003	5.1-CURRENT after changing /bin and /sbin to be dynamically linked
502000	December 7, 2003	5.2-RELEASE
502010	February 23, 2004	5.2.1-RELEASE
502100	December 7, 2003	5.2-CURRENT after branching for RELENG_5_2
502101	December 19, 2003	5.2-CURRENT after __cxa_atexit/__cxa_finalize functions were added to libc.
502102	January 30, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after change of default thread library from libc_r to libpthread.
502103	February 21, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after device driver API megapatch.
502104	February 25, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after getopt_long_only() addition.
502105	March 5, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after NULL is made into ((void *)0) for C, creating more warnings.
502106	March 8, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after pf is linked to the build and install.
502107	March 10, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after time_t is changed to a 64-bit value on sparc64.
502108	March 12, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after Intel C/C++ compiler support in some headers and execve(2) changes to be more strictly conforming to POSIX.
502109	March 22, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the introduction of the bus_alloc_resource_any API
502110	March 27, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the addition of UTF-8 locales
502111	April 11, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the removal of the getvfsent(3) API
502112	April 13, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the addition of the .warning directive for make.
502113	June 4, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after ttyioctl() was made mandatory for serial drivers.
502114	June 13, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after import of the ALTQ framework.

Value	Date	Release
502115	June 14, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing <code>sema_timedwait(9)</code> to return 0 on success and a non-zero error code on failure.
502116	June 16, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing kernel <code>dev_t</code> to be pointer to struct <code>cdev *</code> .
502117	June 17, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing kernel <code>udev_t</code> to <code>dev_t</code> .
502118	June 17, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after adding support for <code>CLOCK_VIRTUAL</code> and <code>CLOCK_PROF</code> to <code>clock_gettime(2)</code> and <code>clock_getres(2)</code> .
502119	June 22, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing network interface cloning overhaul.
502120	July 2, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the update of the package tools to revision 20040629.
502121	July 9, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after marking Bluetooth code as non-i386 specific.
502122	July 11, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the introduction of the KDB debugger framework, the conversion of DDB into a backend and the introduction of the GDB backend.
502123	July 12, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after change to make <code>VFS_ROOT</code> take a struct thread argument as does <code>vflush</code> . Struct <code>kinfo_proc</code> now has a user data pointer. The switch of the default X implementation to <code>xorg</code> was also made at this time.
502124	July 24, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the change to separate the way ports <code>rc.d</code> and legacy scripts are started.
502125	July 28, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the backout of the previous change.
502126	July 31, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the removal of <code>kmem_alloc_pageable()</code> and the import of gcc 3.4.2.
502127	August 2, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after changing the UMA kernel API to allow ctors/inits to fail.

Value	Date	Release
502128	August 8, 2004	5.2-CURRENT after the change of the vfs_mount signature as well as global replacement of PRISON_ROOT with SUSER_ALLOWJAIL for the suser(9) API.
503000	August 23, 2004	5.3-BETA/RC before the pfil API change
503001	September 22, 2004	5.3-RELEASE
503100	October 16, 2004	5.3-STABLE after branching for RELENG_5_3
503101	December 3, 2004	5.3-STABLE after addition of glibc style strftime(3) padding options.
503102	February 13, 2005	5.3-STABLE after OpenBSD's nc(1) import MFC.
503103	February 27, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the fixes in <src/include/stdbool.h> and <src/sys/i386/include/_types.h> for using the GCC-compatibility of the Intel C/C++ compiler.
503104	February 28, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the change of ifi_epoch from wall clock time to uptime.
503105	March 2, 2005	5.4-PRERELEASE after the MFC of the fix of EOVERFLOW check in vswprintf(3).
504000	April 3, 2005	5.4-RELEASE.
504100	April 3, 2005	5.4-STABLE after branching for RELENG_5_4
504101	May 11, 2005	5.4-STABLE after increasing the default thread stacksize
504102	June 24, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the addition of sha256
504103	October 3, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the MFC of if_bridge
504104	November 13, 2005	5.4-STABLE after the MFC of bsdiff and portsnap
504105	January 17, 2006	5.4-STABLE after MFC of ldconfig_local_dirs change.
505000	May 12, 2006	5.5-RELEASE.
505100	May 12, 2006	5.5-STABLE after branching for RELENG_5_5

Value	Date	Release
600000	August 18, 2004	6.0-CURRENT
600001	August 27, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after permanently enabling PFIL_HOOKS in the kernel.
600002	August 30, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after initial addition of ifi_epoch to struct if_data. Backed out after a few days. Do not use this value.
600003	September 8, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after the re-addition of the ifi_epoch member of struct if_data.
600004	September 29, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the struct inpcb argument to the pfil API.
600005	October 5, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the "-d DESTDIR" argument to newsyslog.
600006	November 4, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of glibc style strftime(3) padding options.
600007	December 12, 2004	6.0-CURRENT after addition of 802.11 framework updates.
600008	January 25, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after changes to VOP_*VOBJECT() functions and introduction of MNTK_MPSAFE flag for Giantfree filesystems.
600009	February 4, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after addition of the cpufreq framework and drivers.
600010	February 6, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after importing OpenBSD's nc(1).
600011	February 12, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after removing semblance of SVID2 matherr() support.
600012	February 15, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after increase of default thread stacks' size.
600013	February 19, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after fixes in <code><src/include/stdbool.h></code> and <code><src/sys/i386/include/_types.h></code> for using the GCC-compatibility of the Intel C/C++ compiler.
600014	February 21, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after EOVERFLOW checks in vsprintf(3) fixed.
600015	February 25, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after changing the struct if_data member, ifi_epoch, from wall clock time to uptime.

Value	Date	Release
600016	February 26, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after LC_CTYPE disk format changed.
600017	February 27, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after NLS catalogs disk format changed.
600018	February 27, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after LC_COLLATE disk format changed.
600019	February 28, 2005	Installation of acpica includes into /usr/include.
600020	March 9, 2005	Addition of MSG_NOSIGNAL flag to send(2) API.
600021	March 17, 2005	Addition of fields to cdevsw
600022	March 21, 2005	Removed gtar from base system.
600023	April 13, 2005	LOCAL_CREDS, LOCAL_CONNWAIT socket options added to unix(4).
600024	April 19, 2005	hwpmc(4) and related tools added to 6.0-CURRENT.
600025	April 26, 2005	struct icmphdr added to 6.0-CURRENT.
600026	May 3, 2005	pf updated to 3.7.
600027	May 6, 2005	Kernel libalias and ng_nat introduced.
600028	May 13, 2005	POSIX ttyname_r(3) made available through unistd.h and libc.
600029	May 29, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after libpcap updated to v0.9.1 alpha 096.
600030	June 5, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after importing NetBSD's if_bridge(4).
600031	June 10, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after struct ifnet was broken out of the driver softcs.
600032	July 11, 2005	6.0-CURRENT after the import of libpcap v0.9.1.
600033	July 25, 2005	6.0-STABLE after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since RELENG_5.
600034	August 13, 2005	6.0-STABLE after credential argument is added to dev_clone event handler. 6.0-RELEASE.
600100	November 1, 2005	6.0-STABLE after 6.0-RELEASE
600101	December 21, 2005	6.0-STABLE after incorporating scripts from the local_startup directories into the base rcorder(8).

Value	Date	Release
600102	December 30, 2005	6.0-STABLE after updating the ELF types and constants.
600103	January 15, 2006	6.0-STABLE after MFC of pidfile(3) API.
600104	January 17, 2006	6.0-STABLE after MFC of ldconfig_local_dirs change.
600105	February 26, 2006	6.0-STABLE after NLS catalog support of csh(1).
601000	May 6, 2006	6.1-RELEASE
601100	May 6, 2006	6.1-STABLE after 6.1-RELEASE.
601101	June 22, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the import of csup.
601102	July 11, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the iwi(4) update.
601103	July 17, 2006	6.1-STABLE after the resolver update to BIND9, and exposure of reentrant version of netdb functions.
601104	August 8, 2006	6.1-STABLE after DSO (dynamic shared objects) support has been enabled in OpenSSL.
601105	September 2, 2006	6.1-STABLE after 802.11 fixups changed the api for the IEEE80211_IOC_STA_INFO ioctl.
602000	November 15, 2006	6.2-RELEASE
602100	September 15, 2006	6.2-STABLE after 6.2-RELEASE.
602101	December 12, 2006	6.2-STABLE after the addition of Wi-Spy quirk.
602102	December 28, 2006	6.2-STABLE after pci_find_extcap() addition.
602103	January 16, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of dlsym change to look for a requested symbol both in specified dso and its implicit dependencies.
602104	January 28, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of ng_deflate(4) and ng_pred1(4) netgraph nodes and new compression and encryption modes for ng_ppp(4) node.
602105	February 20, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of BSD licensed version of gzip(1) ported from NetBSD.
602106	March 31, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of PCI MSI and MSI-X support.

Value	Date	Release
602107	April 6, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of ncurses 5.6 and wide character support.
602108	April 11, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of CAM 'SG' peripheral device, which implements a subset of Linux SCSI SG passthrough device API.
602109	April 17, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of readline 5.2 patchset 002.
602110	May 2, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of pmap_invalidate_cache(), pmap_change_attr(), pmap_mapbios(), pmap_mapdev_attr(), and pmap_unmapbios() for amd64 and i386.
602111	June 11, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of BOP_BDFLUSH and caused breakage of the filesystem modules KBI.
602112	September 21, 2007	6.2-STABLE after libutil(3) MFC's.
602113	October 25, 2007	6.2-STABLE after MFC of wide and single byte ctype separation. Newly compiled binary that references to ctype.h may require a new symbol, __mb_sb_limit, which is not available on older systems.
602114	October 30, 2007	6.2-STABLE after ctype ABI forward compatibility restored.
602115	November 21, 2007	6.2-STABLE after back out of wide and single byte ctype separation.
603000	November 25, 2007	6.3-RELEASE
603100	November 25, 2007	6.3-STABLE after 6.3-RELEASE.
603101	December 7, 2007	6.3-STABLE after fixing multibyte type support in bit macro.
603102	April 24, 2008	6.3-STABLE after adding l_sysid to struct flock.
603103	May 27, 2008	6.3-STABLE after MFC of the memrchr function.
603104	June 15, 2008	6.3-STABLE after MFC of support for :u variable modifier in make(1).
604000	October 4, 2008	6.4-RELEASE
604100	October 4, 2008	6.4-STABLE after 6.4-RELEASE.
700000	July 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT.

Value	Date	Release
700001	July 23, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since RELENG_5.
700002	August 13, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after credential argument is added to dev_clone event handler.
700003	August 25, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after memmem(3) is added to libc.
700004	October 30, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after solisten(9) kernel arguments are modified to accept a backlog parameter.
700005	November 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after IFP2ENADDR() was changed to return a pointer to IF_LLADDR().
700006	November 11, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after addition of if_addr member to struct ifnet and IFP2ENADDR() removal.
700007	December 2, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after incorporating scripts from the local_startup directories into the base rcorder(8).
700008	December 5, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after removal of MNT_NODEV mount option.
700009	December 19, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after ELF-64 type changes and symbol versioning.
700010	December 20, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after addition of hostb and vgapci drivers, addition of pci_find_extcap(), and changing the AGP drivers to no longer map the aperture.
700011	December 31, 2005	7.0-CURRENT after tv_sec was made time_t on all platforms but Alpha.
700012	January 8, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after ldconfig_local_dirs change.
700013	January 12, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after changes to /etc/rc.d/abi to support /compat/linux/etc/ld.so.cache being a symlink in a readonly filesystem.
700014	January 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after pts import.
700015	March 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the introduction of version 2 of hwpmc(4)'s ABI.

Value	Date	Release
700016	April 22, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>fcloseall(3)</code> to <code>libc</code> .
700017	May 13, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after removal of <code>ip6fw</code> .
700018	July 15, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of <code>snd_emu10kx</code> .
700019	July 29, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 0.9.8b.
700020	September 3, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>bus_dma_get_tag</code> function
700021	September 4, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after <code>libpcap</code> 0.9.4 and <code>tcpdump</code> 3.9.4 import.
700022	September 9, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after <code>dlsym</code> change to look for a requested symbol both in specified <code>dso</code> and its implicit dependencies.
700023	September 23, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after adding new sound IOCTLs for the OSSv4 mixer API.
700024	September 28, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 0.9.8d.
700025	November 11, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>libelf</code> .
700026	November 26, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after major changes on sound sysctls.
700027	November 30, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of Wi-Spy quirk.
700028	December 15, 2006	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>sctp</code> calls to <code>libc</code>
700029	January 26, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the GNU <code>gzip(1)</code> implementation was replaced with a BSD licensed version ported from NetBSD.
700030	February 7, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the removal of IPIP tunnel encapsulation (<code>VIFF_TUNNEL</code>) from the IPv4 multicast forwarding code.
700031	February 23, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the modification of <code>bus_setup_intr()</code> (<code>newbus</code>).
700032	March 2, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the inclusion of <code>ipw(4)</code> and <code>iwi(4)</code> firmware.
700033	March 9, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the inclusion of ncurses wide character support.

Value	Date	Release
700034	March 19, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changes to how <code>insmntque()</code> , <code>getnewvnode()</code> , and <code>vfs_hash_insert()</code> work.
700035	March 26, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after addition of a notify mechanism for CPU frequency changes.
700036	April 6, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after import of the ZFS filesystem.
700037	April 8, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after addition of CAM 'SG' peripheral device, which implements a subset of Linux SCSI SG passthrough device API.
700038	April 30, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing <code>getenv(3)</code> , <code>putenv(3)</code> , <code>setenv(3)</code> and <code>unsetenv(3)</code> to be POSIX conformant.
700039	May 1, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the changes in 700038 were backed out.
700040	May 10, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>flopen(3)</code> to <code>libutil</code> .
700041	May 13, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after enabling symbol versioning, and changing the default thread library to <code>libthr</code> .
700042	May 19, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the import of gcc 4.2.0.
700043	May 21, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after bump of all shared library versions that had not been changed since <code>RELENG_6</code> .
700044	June 7, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing the argument for <code>vn_open()/VOP_OPEN()</code> from file descriptor index to the struct file *.
700045	June 10, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after changing <code>pam_nologin(8)</code> to provide an account management function instead of an authentication function to the PAM framework.
700046	June 11, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after updated 802.11 wireless support.
700047	June 11, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after adding TCP LRO interface capabilities.

Value	Date	Release
700048	June 12, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after RFC 3678 API support added to the IPv4 stack. Legacy RFC 1724 behavior of the IP_MULTICAST_IF ioctl has now been removed; 0.0.0.0/8 may no longer be used to specify an interface index. struct ipmreqn should be used instead.
700049	July 3, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after importing pf from OpenBSD 4.1
(not changed)		7.0-CURRENT after adding IPv6 support for FAST_IPSEC, deleting KAME IPSEC, and renaming FAST_IPSEC to IPSEC.
700050	July 4, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after converting setenv/putenv/etc. calls from traditional BSD to POSIX.
700051	July 4, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after adding new mmap/lseek/etc syscalls.
700052	July 6, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after moving I4B headers to include/i4b.
700053	September 30, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after the addition of support for PCI domains
700054	October 25, 2007	7.0-CURRENT after MFC of wide and single byte ctype separation.
700055	October 28, 2007	7.0-RELEASE, and 7.0-CURRENT after ABI backwards compatibility to the FreeBSD 4/5/6 versions of the PCIOCGETCONF, PCIOCREAD and PCIOCWRITE IOCTLs was MFCed, which required the ABI of the PCIOCGETCONF IOCTL to be broken again
700100	December 22, 2007	7.0-STABLE after 7.0-RELEASE
700101	February 8, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of m_collapse().
700102	March 30, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of kdb_enter_why().
700103	April 10, 2008	7.0-STABLE after adding l_sysid to struct flock.
700104	April 11, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of procstat(1).
700105	April 11, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of umtx features.

Value	Date	Release
700106	April 15, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of write(2) support to psm(4).
700107	April 20, 2008	7.0-STABLE after the MFC of F_DUP2FD command to fcntl(2).
700108	May 5, 2008	7.0-STABLE after some lockmgr(9) changes, which makes it necessary to include <code>sys/lock.h</code> in order to use lockmgr(9).
700109	May 27, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of the <code>memrchr</code> function.
700110	August 5, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of kernel NFS lockd client.
700111	August 20, 2008	7.0-STABLE after addition of physically contiguous jumbo frame support.
700112	August 27, 2008	7.0-STABLE after MFC of kernel DTrace support.
701000	November 25, 2008	7.1-RELEASE
701100	November 25, 2008	7.1-STABLE after 7.1-RELEASE.
701101	January 10, 2009	7.1-STABLE after <code>strndup</code> merge.
701102	January 17, 2009	7.1-STABLE after <code>cpuctl(4)</code> support added.
701103	February 7, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the merge of multi-/no-IPv4/v6 jails.
701104	February 14, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the store of the suspension owner in the struct mount, and introduction of <code>vfs_susp_clean</code> method into the struct <code>vfsops</code> .
701105	March 12, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the incompatible change to the <code>kern.ipc.shmsegs</code> sysctl to allow to allocate larger SysV shared memory segments on 64bit architectures.
701106	March 14, 2009	7.1-STABLE after the merge of a fix for POSIX semaphore wait operations.
702000	April 15, 2009	7.2-RELEASE
702100	April 15, 2009	7.2-STABLE after 7.2-RELEASE.
702101	May 15, 2009	7.2-STABLE after <code>ichsmb(4)</code> was changed to use left-adjusted slave addressing to match other SMBus controller drivers.

Value	Date	Release
702102	May 28, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the <code>fdopendir</code> function.
702103	June 06, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of PmcTools.
702104	July 14, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the <code>closefrom</code> system call.
702105	July 31, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the SYSVIPC ABI change.
702106	September 14, 2009	7.2-STABLE after MFC of the x86 PAT enhancements and addition of <code>d_mmap_single()</code> and the scatter/gather list VM object type.
703000	February 9, 2010	7.3-RELEASE
703100	February 9, 2010	7.3-STABLE after 7.3-RELEASE.
704000	December 22, 2010	7.4-RELEASE
704100	December 22, 2010	7.4-STABLE after 7.4-RELEASE.
800000	October 11, 2007	8.0-CURRENT. Separating wide and single byte ctype.
800001	October 16, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after libpcap 0.9.8 and tcpdump 3.9.8 import.
800002	October 21, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after renaming <code>kthread_create()</code> and friends to <code>kproc_create()</code> etc.
800003	October 24, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after ABI backwards compatibility to the FreeBSD 4/5/6 versions of the PCIOCGETCONF, PCIOCREAD and PCIOCWRITE IOCTLs was added, which required the ABI of the PCIOCGETCONF IOCTL to be broken again
800004	November 12, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after agp(4) driver moved from <code>src/sys/pci</code> to <code>src/sys/dev/agp</code>
800005	December 4, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after changes to the jumbo frame allocator (http://www.freebsd.org/cgi/cvsweb.cgi/src/sys/kern/kern)
800006	December 7, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of callgraph capture functionality to <code>hwpmc(4)</code> .
800007	December 25, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after <code>kdb_enter()</code> gains a "why" argument.

Value	Date	Release
800008	December 28, 2007	8.0-CURRENT after LK_EXCLUPGRADE option removal.
800009	January 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of lockmgr_disown(9)
800010	January 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the vn_lock(9) prototype change.
800011	January 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the VOP_LOCK(9) and VOP_UNLOCK(9) prototype changes.
800012	January 19, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of lockmgr_recurse(9), BUF_RECURSED(9) and BUF_ISLOCKED(9) and the removal of BUF_REFCNT () .
800013	January 23, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the “ASCII” encoding.
800014	January 24, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the prototype of lockmgr(9) and removal of lockcount () and LOCKMGR_ASSERT () .
800015	January 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after extending the types of the fts(3) structures.
800016	February 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding an argument to MEXTADD(9)
800017	February 6, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of LK_NODUP and LK_NOWITNESS options in the lockmgr(9) space.
800018	February 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of m_collapse.
800019	February 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of current working directory, root directory, and jail directory support to the kern.proc.filedesc sysctl.
800020	February 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of lockmgr_assert(9) and BUF_ASSERT functions.
800021	February 15, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of lockmgr_args(9) and LK_INTERNAL flag removal.
800022	(backed out)	8.0-CURRENT after changing the default system ar to BSD ar(1).

Value	Date	Release
800023	February 25, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the prototypes of <code>lockstatus(9)</code> and <code>VOP_ISLOCKED(9)</code> , more specifically retiring the <code>struct thread</code> argument.
800024	March 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after axing out the <code>lockwaiters</code> and <code>BUF_LOCKWAITERS</code> functions, changing the return value of <code>brelvp</code> from <code>void</code> to <code>int</code> and introducing new flags for <code>lockinit(9)</code> .
800025	March 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding <code>F_DUP2FD</code> command to <code>fcntl(2)</code> .
800026	March 12, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the priority parameter to <code>cv_broadcastpri</code> such that 0 means no priority.
800027	March 24, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing the bpf monitoring ABI when zerocopy bpf buffers were added.
800028	March 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after adding <code>l_sysid</code> to <code>struct flock</code> .
800029	March 28, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after reintegration of the <code>BUF_LOCKWAITERS</code> function and the addition of <code>lockmgr_waiters(9)</code> .
800030	April 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the <code>rw_try_rlock(9)</code> and <code>rw_try_wlock(9)</code> functions.
800031	April 6, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the <code>lockmgr_rw</code> and <code>lockmgr_args_rw</code> functions.
800032	April 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the implementation of the <code>openat</code> and related syscalls, introduction of the <code>O_EXEC</code> flag for the <code>open(2)</code> , and providing the corresponding linux compatibility syscalls.
800033	April 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after added <code>write(2)</code> support for <code>psm(4)</code> in native operation level. Now arbitrary commands can be written to <code>/dev/psm%d</code> and status can be read back from it.
800034	April 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the <code>memrchr</code> function.

Value	Date	Release
800035	April 16, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of the <code>fdopendir</code> function.
800036	April 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after switchover of 802.11 wireless to multi-bss support (aka vaps).
800037	May 9, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of multi routing table support (aka <code>setfib(1)</code> , <code>setfib(2)</code>).
800038	May 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <code>netatm</code> and <code>ISDN4BSD</code> . Also, the addition of the Compact C Type (CTF) tools.
800039	June 14, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <code>sgtty</code> .
800040	June 26, 2008	8.0-CURRENT with kernel NFS <code>lockd</code> client.
800041	July 22, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>arc4random_buf(3)</code> and <code>arc4random_uniform(3)</code> .
800042	August 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>cpuctl(4)</code> .
800043	August 13, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after changing <code>bpf(4)</code> to use a single device node, instead of device cloning.
800044	August 17, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the commit of the first step of the <code>vmimage</code> project renaming global variables to be virtualized with a <code>V_</code> prefix with macros to map them back to their global names.
800045	August 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the integration of the MPSAFE TTY layer, including changes to various drivers and utilities that interact with it.
800046	September 8, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the separation of the GDT per CPU on amd64 architecture.
800047	September 10, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <code>VSVTX</code> , <code>VSGID</code> and <code>VSUID</code> .
800048	September 16, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after converting the kernel NFS mount code to accept individual mount options in the <code>nmount()</code> <code>iovec</code> , not just one big struct <code>nfs_args</code> .

Value	Date	Release
800049	September 17, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of <code>suser(9)</code> and <code>suser_cred(9)</code> .
800050	October 20, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after buffer cache API change.
800051	October 23, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of the <code>MALLOC(9)</code> and <code>FREE(9)</code> macros.
800052	October 28, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of <code>accmode_t</code> and renaming of <code>VOP_ACCESS</code> 'a_mode' argument to 'a_accmode'.
800053	November 2, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the prototype change of <code>vfs_busy(9)</code> and the introduction of its <code>MBF_NOWAIT</code> and <code>MBF_MNTLSTLOCK</code> flags.
800054	November 22, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>buf_ring</code> , memory barriers and <code>ifnet</code> functions to facilitate multiple hardware transmit queues for cards that support them, and a lockless ring-buffer implementation to enable drivers to more efficiently manage queuing of packets.
800055	November 27, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of Intel™ Core, Core2, and Atom support to <code>hwpmc(4)</code> .
800056	November 29, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of multi-/no-IPv4/v6 jails.
800057	December 1, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the switch to the ath hal source code.
800058	December 12, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the <code>VOP_VPTOCNP</code> operation.
800059	December 15, 2008	8.0-CURRENT incorporates the new <code>arp-v2</code> rewrite.
800060	December 19, 2008	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>makefs</code> .
800061	January 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after TCP Appropriate Byte Counting.
800062	January 28, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after removal of <code>minor()</code> , <code>minor2unit()</code> , <code>unit2minor()</code> , etc.
800063	February 18, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after <code>GENERIC</code> config change to use the USB2 stack, but also the addition of <code>fdevname(3)</code> .

Value	Date	Release
800064	February 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the USB2 stack is moved to and replaces dev/usb.
800065	February 26, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the renaming of all functions in libmp(3).
800066	February 27, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing USB devfs handling and layout.
800067	February 28, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding getdelim(), getline(), stpncpy(), strlen(), wcsnlen(), wcsasecmp(), and wcsncasecmp().
800068	March 2, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after renaming the ushub devclass to uhub.
800069	March 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after libusb20.so.1 was renamed to libusb.so.1.
800070	March 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after merging IGMPv3 and Source-Specific Multicast (SSM) to the IPv4 stack.
800071	March 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after gcc was patched to use C99 inline semantics in c99 and gnu99 mode.
800072	March 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the IFF_NEEDSGIANT flag has been removed; non-MPSAFE network device drivers are no longer supported.
800073	March 18, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the dynamic string token substitution has been implemented for rpath and needed paths.
800074	March 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after tcpdump 4.0.0 and libpcap 1.0.0 import.
800075	April 6, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after layout of structs vnet_net, vnet_inet and vnet_ipfw has been changed.
800076	April 9, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding delay profiles in dummynet.
800077	April 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after removing VOP_LEASE() and vop_vector.vop_lease.

Value	Date	Release
800078	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after struct <code>rt_weight</code> fields have been added to struct <code>rt_metrics</code> and struct <code>rt_metrics_lite</code> , changing the layout of struct <code>rt_metrics_lite</code> . A bump to <code>RTM_VERSION</code> was made, but backed out.
800079	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after struct <code>llentry</code> pointers are added to struct <code>route</code> and struct <code>route_in6</code> .
800080	April 15, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after layout of struct <code>inpcb</code> has been changed.
800081	April 19, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the layout of struct <code>malloc_type</code> has been changed.
800082	April 21, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the layout of struct <code>ifnet</code> has changed, and with <code>if_ref()</code> and <code>if_rele()</code> <code>ifnet</code> refcounting.
800083	April 22, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the implementation of a low-level Bluetooth HCI API.
800084	April 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after IPv6 SSM and MLDv2 changes.
800085	April 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after enabling support for VIMAGE kernel builds with one active image.
800086	May 8, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding support for input lines of arbitrarily length in <code>patch(1)</code> .
800087	May 11, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after some VFS KPI changes. The <code>thread</code> argument has been removed from the FSD parts of the VFS. <code>VFS_*</code> functions do not need the context any more because it always refers to <code>curthread</code> . In some special cases, the old behavior is retained.
800088	May 20, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after net80211 monitor mode changes.
800089	May 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding UDP control block support.
800090	May 23, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after virtualizing interface cloning.

Value	Date	Release
800091	May 27, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding hierarchical jails and removing global securelevel.
800092	May 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing <code>sx_init_flags()</code> KPI. The <code>SX_ADAPTIVESPIN</code> is retired and a new <code>SX_NOADAPTIVE</code> flag is introduced in order to handle the reversed logic.
800093	May 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding <code>mnt_xflag</code> to struct mount.
800094	May 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after adding <code>VOP_ACCESSX(9)</code> .
800095	May 30, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after changing the polling KPI. The polling handlers now return the number of packets processed. A new <code>IFCAP_POLLING_NOCOUNT</code> is also introduced to specify that the return value is not significant and the counting should be skipped.
800096	June 1, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after updating to the new netisr implementation and after changing the way we store and access FIBs.
800097	June 8, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of vnet destructor hooks and infrastructure.
800097	June 11, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the introduction of netgraph outbound to inbound path call detection and queuing, which also changed the layout of struct thread.
800098	June 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after OpenSSL 0.9.8k import.
800099	June 22, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after NGROUPS update and moving route virtualization into its own VImage module.
800100	June 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after SYSVIPIC ABI change.
800101	June 29, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the removal of the <code>/dev/net/*</code> per-interface character devices.

Value	Date	Release
800102	July 12, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after padding was added to struct sackhint, struct tcpcb, and struct tcpstat.
800103	July 13, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after replacing struct tcptopt with struct toeopt in the TOE driver interface to the TCP syn cache.
800104	July 14, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after the addition of the linker-set based per-vnet allocator.
800105	July 19, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after version bump for all shared libraries that do not have symbol versioning turned on.
800106	July 24, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after introduction of OBJT_SG VM object type.
800107	August 2, 2009	8.0-CURRENT after making the newbus subsystem Giant free by adding the newbus sxlock and 8.0-RELEASE.
800108	November 21, 2009	8.0-STABLE after implementing EVFILT_USER kevent filter.
800500	January 7, 2010	8.0-STABLE after <code>__FreeBSD_version</code> bump to <code>make pkg_add -r use packages-8-stable</code> .
800501	January 24, 2010	8.0-STABLE after change of the <code>scandir(3)</code> and <code>alphasort(3)</code> prototypes to conform to SUSv4.
800502	January 31, 2010	8.0-STABLE after addition of <code>sigpause(3)</code> .
800503	February 25, 2010	8.0-STABLE after addition of <code>SIOCGIFDESCR</code> and <code>SIOCSIFDESCR</code> ioctls to network interfaces. These ioctls can be used to manipulate interface description, as inspired by OpenBSD.
800504	March 1, 2010	8.0-STABLE after MFC of importing <code>x86emu</code> , a software emulator for real mode x86 CPU from OpenBSD.
800505	May 18, 2010	8.0-STABLE after MFC of adding <code>liblzma</code> , <code>xz</code> , <code>xzdec</code> , and <code>lzmainfo</code> .
801000	June 14, 2010	8.1-RELEASE
801500	June 14, 2010	8.1-STABLE after 8.1-RELEASE.

Value	Date	Release
801501	November 3, 2010	8.1-STABLE after KBI change in struct sysentvec, and implementation of PL_FLAG_SCE/SCX/EXEC/SI and pl_siginfo for ptrace(PT_LWPINFO) .
802000	December 22, 2010	8.2-RELEASE
802500	December 22, 2010	8.2-STABLE after 8.2-RELEASE.
802501	February 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging DTrace changes, including support for userland tracing.
802502	March 6, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging log2 and log2f into libm.
802503	May 1, 2011	8.2-STABLE after upgrade of the gcc to the last GPLv2 version from the FSF gcc-4_2-branch.
802504	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after introduction of the KPI and supporting infrastructure for modular congestion control.
802505	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after introduction of Hhook and Khelp KPIs.
802506	May 28, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of OSD to struct tcpcb.
802507	June 6, 2011	8.2-STABLE after ZFS v28 import.
802508	June 8, 2011	8.2-STABLE after removal of the schedtail event handler and addition of the sv_schedtail method to struct sysvec.
802509	July 14, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging the SSSE3 support into binutils.
802510	July 19, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of RFTSIGZMB flag for <code>rfork(2)</code> .
802511	September 9, 2011	8.2-STABLE after addition of automatic detection of USB mass storage devices which do not support the no synchronize cache SCSI command.
802512	September 10, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of re-factoring of auto-quirk.
802513	October 25, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of the MAP_PREFAULT_READ flag to <code>mmap(2)</code> .
802514	November 16, 2011	8.2-STABLE after merging of addition of <code>posix_fallocate(2)</code> syscall.

Value	Date	Release
802515	January 6, 2012	8.2-STABLE after merging of addition of the <code>posix_fadvise(2)</code> system call.
802516	January 16, 2012	8.2-STABLE after merging gperf 3.0.3
802517	February 15, 2012	8.2-STABLE after introduction of the new extensible <code>sysctl(3)</code> interface <code>NET_RT_IFLISTL</code> to query address lists (rev 231769).
803000	March 3, 2012	8.3-RELEASE.
803500	March 3, 2012	8.3-STABLE after branching <code>releng/8.3</code> (<code>RELENG_8_3</code>).
804000	March 28, 2013	<code>releng/8.4</code> (<code>RELENG_8_4</code>) branch point.
804500	March 28, 2013	8.4-STABLE after branching <code>releng/8.4</code> (<code>RELENG_8_4</code>).
900000	August 22, 2009	9.0-CURRENT.
900001	September 8, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after importing <code>x86emu</code> , a software emulator for real mode x86 CPU from OpenBSD.
900002	September 23, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after implementing the <code>EVFILT_USER</code> kevent filter functionality.
900003	December 2, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>sigpause(3)</code> and PIE support in <code>csu</code> .
900004	December 6, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>libulog</code> and its <code>libutempter</code> compatibility interface.
900005	December 12, 2009	9.0-CURRENT after addition of <code>sleepq_sleepcnt()</code> , which can be used to query the number of waiters on a specific waiting queue.
900006	January 4, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after change of the <code>scandir(3)</code> and <code>alphasort(3)</code> prototypes to conform to SUSv4.
900007	January 13, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of <code>utmp(5)</code> and the addition of <code>utmpx</code> (see <code>getutxent(3)</code>) for improved logging of user logins and system events.
900008	January 20, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of BSD's <code>bc/dc</code> and the deprecation of GNU <code>bc/dc</code> .

Value	Date	Release
900009	January 26, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of SIOCGIFDESCR and SIOCSIFDESCR ioctls to network interfaces. These ioctl can be used to manipulate interface description, as inspired by OpenBSD.
900010	March 22, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of zlib 1.2.4.
900011	April 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding soft-updates journaling.
900012	May 10, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding liblzma, xz, xzdec, and lzmainfo.
900013	May 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after bringing in USB fixes for linux(4).
900014	June 10, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding Clang.
900015	July 22, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the import of BSD grep.
900016	July 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding mti_zone to struct malloc_type_internal.
900017	August 23, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after changing back default grep to GNU grep and adding WITH_BSD_GREP knob.
900018	August 24, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the pthread_kill(3) -generated signal is identified as SI_LWP in si_code. Previously, si_code was SI_USER.
900019	August 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after addition of the MAP_PREFAULT_READ flag to mmap(2).
900020	September 9, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after adding drain functionality to sbufs, which also changed the layout of struct sbuf.
900021	September 13, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after DTrace has grown support for userland tracing.
900022	October 2, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after addition of the BSD man utilities and retirement of GNU/GPL man utilities.
900023	October 11, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after updating xz to git 20101010 snapshot.
900024	November 11, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after libgcc.a was replaced by libcompiler_rt.a.

Value	Date	Release
900025	November 12, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the introduction of the modularised congestion control.
900026	November 30, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the introduction of Serial Management Protocol (SMP) passthrough and the XPT_SMP_IO and XPT_GDEV_ADVINFO CAM CCBs.
900027	December 5, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of log2 to libm.
900028	December 21, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of the Hhook (Helper Hook), Khelp (Kernel Helpers) and Object Specific Data (OSD) KPIs.
900029	December 28, 2010	9.0-CURRENT after the modification of the TCP stack to allow Khelp modules to interact with it via helper hook points and store per-connection data in the TCP control block.
900030	January 12, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of libdialog to version 20100428.
900031	February 7, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the addition of <code>pthread_getthreadid_np(3)</code> .
900032	February 8, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of the <code>uio_yield</code> prototype and symbol.
900033	February 18, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of binutils to version 2.17.50.
900034	March 8, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the struct <code>sysvec (sv_schedtail)</code> changes.
900035	March 29, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the update of base gcc and libstdc++ to the last GPLv2 licensed revision.
900036	April 18, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the removal of libobjc and Objective-C support from the base system.
900037	May 13, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after importing the <code>libprocstat(3)</code> library and <code>fuser(1)</code> utility to the base system.
900038	May 22, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after adding a lock flag argument to <code>VFS_FHTOVP(9)</code> .
900039	June 28, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after importing pf from OpenBSD 4.5.

Value	Date	Release
900040	July 19, 2011	Increase default MAXCPU for FreeBSD to 64 on amd64 and ia64 and to 128 for XLP (mips).
900041	August 13, 2011	9.0-CURRENT after the implementation of Capsicum capabilities; fget(9) gains a rights argument.
900042	August 28, 2011	Bump shared libraries' version numbers for libraries whose ABI has changed in preparation for 9.0.
900043	September 2, 2011	Add automatic detection of USB mass storage devices which do not support the no synchronize cache SCSI command.
900044	September 10, 2011	Re-factor auto-quirk. 9.0-RELEASE.
900045	January 2, 2012	9-CURRENT after MFC of true/false from 1000002.
900500	January 2, 2012	9.0-STABLE.
900501	January 6, 2012	9.0-STABLE after merging of addition of the posix_fadvise(2) system call.
900502	January 16, 2012	9.0-STABLE after merging gperf 3.0.3
900503	February 15, 2012	9.0-STABLE after introduction of the new extensible sysctl(3) interface NET_RT_IFLISTL to query address lists (rev 231768).
900504	March 3, 2012	9.0-STABLE after changes related to mounting of filesystem inside a jail (rev 232728).
900505	March 13, 2012	9.0-STABLE after introduction of new tcp(4) socket options: TCP_KEEPPIDLE, TCP_KEEPPIDLE, TCP_KEEPPIDLE, and TCP_KEEPCNT (rev 232945).
901000	August 5, 2012	9.1-RELEASE.
901500	August 6, 2012	9.1-STABLE after branching releng/9.1 (RELENG_9_1).
901501	November 11, 2012	9.1-STABLE after LIST_PREV() added to queue.h.
901502	November 28, 2012	9.1-STABLE after USB serial jitter buffer requires rebuild of USB serial device modules.

Value	Date	Release
901503	February 21, 2013	9.1-STABLE after USB moved to the driver structure requiring a rebuild of all USB modules. Also indicates the presence of nmtree.
901504	March 15, 2013	9.1-STABLE after install gained -l, -M, -N and related flags and cat gained the -l option.
1000000	September 26, 2011	10.0-CURRENT.
1000001	November 4, 2011	10-CURRENT after addition of the posix_fadvise(2) system call.
1000002	December 12, 2011	10-CURRENT after defining boolean true/false in sys/types.h, sizeof(bool) may have changed (rev 228444). 10-CURRENT after xlocale.h was introduced (rev 227753).
1000003	December 16, 2011	10-CURRENT after major changes to carp(4), changing size of struct in_aliasreq, struct in6_aliasreq (rev 228571) and straitening arguments check of SIOCAIFADDR (rev 228574).
1000004	January 1, 2012	10-CURRENT after the removal of skpc(9) and the addition of memchr(9) (rev 229200).
1000005	January 16, 2012	10-CURRENT after the removal of support for SIOCSIFADDR, SIOCSIFNETMASK, SIOCSIFBRDADDR, SIOCSIFDSTADDR ioctls (rev 230207).
1000006	January 26, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of read capacity data asynchronous notification in the cam(4) layer (rev 230590).
1000007	February 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of new tcp(4) socket options: TCP_KEEPPERSIST, TCP_KEEPPIDLE, TCP_KEEPPINTVL, and TCP_KEEPPCNT (rev 231025).
1000008	February 11, 2012	10-CURRENT after introduction of the new extensible sysctl(3) interface NET_RT_IFLISTL to query address lists (rev 231505).
1000009	February 25, 2012	10-CURRENT after import of libarchive 3.0.3 (rev 232153).

Value	Date	Release
1000010	March 31, 2012	10-CURRENT after xlocale cleanup (rev 233757).
1000011	April 16, 2012	10-CURRENT import of LLVM/Clang 3.1 trunk r154661 (rev 234353).
1000012	May 2, 2012	10-CURRENT jemalloc import (rev 234924).
1000013	May 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after byacc import (rev 235788).
1000014	June 27, 2012	10-CURRENT after BSD sort becoming the default sort (rev 237629).
1000015	July 12, 2012	10-CURRENT after import of OpenSSL 1.0.1c (rev 238405).
(not changed)	July 13, 2012	10-CURRENT after the fix for LLVM/Clang 3.1 regression (rev 238429).
1000016	August 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after KBI change in ucom(4) (rev 239179).
1000017	August 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after adding streams feature to the USB stack (rev 239214).
1000018	September 8, 2012	10-CURRENT after major rewrite of pf(4) (rev 240233).
1000019	October 6, 2012	10-CURRENT after pfil(9) KBI/KPI changed to supply packets in net byte order to AF_INET filter hooks (rev 241245).
1000020	October 16, 2012	10-CURRENT after the network interface cloning KPI changed and struct if_clone becoming opaque (rev 241610).
1000021	October 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after removal of support for non-MPSAFE filesystems and addition of support for FUSEFS (rev 241519 , 241897).
1000022	October 22, 2012	10-CURRENT after the entire IPv4 stack switched to network byte order for IP packet header storage (rev 241913).

Value	Date	Release
1000023	November 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after jitter buffer in the common USB serial driver code, to temporarily store characters if the TTY buffer is full. Add flow stop and start signals when this happens (rev 242619).
1000024	November 5, 2012	10-CURRENT after clang was made the default compiler on i386 and amd64 (rev 242624).
1000025	November 17, 2012	10-CURRENT after the <code>sin6_scope_id</code> member variable in struct <code>sockaddr_in6</code> was changed to being filled by the kernel before passing the structure to the userland via <code>sysctl</code> or routing socket. This means the KAME-specific embedded scope id in <code>sin6_addr.s6_addr[2]</code> is always cleared in userland application (rev 243443).
1000026	January 11, 2013	10-CURRENT after install gained the <code>-N</code> flag (rev 245313). May also be used to indicate the presence of <code>nm-tree</code> .
1000027	January 29, 2013	10-CURRENT after <code>cat</code> gained the <code>-l</code> flag (rev 246083).
1000030	March 12, 2013	10-CURRENT after KPI breakage introduced in the VM subsystem to support read/write locking (rev 248084).

Note: Note that 2.2-STABLE sometimes identifies itself as “2.2.5-STABLE” after the 2.2.5-RELEASE. The pattern used to be year followed by the month, but we decided to change it to a more straightforward major/minor system starting from 2.2. This is because the parallel development on several branches made it infeasible to classify the releases simply by their real release dates. If you are making a port now, you do not have to worry about old -CURRENTs; they are listed here just for your reference.

12.6 Writing Something After `bsd.port.mk`

Do not write anything after the `.include <bsd.port.mk>` line. It usually can be avoided by including `bsd.port.pre.mk` somewhere in the middle of your Makefile and `bsd.port.post.mk` at the end.

Note: Include either the `bsd.port.pre.mk/bsd.port.post.mk` pair or `bsd.port.mk` only; do not mix these two usages.

`bsd.port.pre.mk` only defines a few variables, which can be used in tests in the `Makefile`, `bsd.port.post.mk` defines the rest.

Here are some important variables defined in `bsd.port.pre.mk` (this is not the complete list, please read `bsd.port.mk` for the complete list).

Variable	Description
ARCH	The architecture as returned by <code>uname -m</code> (e.g., <code>i386</code>)
OPSYS	The operating system type, as returned by <code>uname -s</code> (e.g., <code>FreeBSD</code>)
OSREL	The release version of the operating system (e.g., <code>2.1.5</code> or <code>2.2.7</code>)
OSVERSION	The numeric version of the operating system; the same as <code>__FreeBSD_version</code> .
LOCALBASE	The base of the “local” tree (e.g., <code>/usr/local</code>)
PREFIX	Where the port installs itself (see more on <code>PREFIX</code>).

Note: If you have to define the variables `USE_IMAKE` or `MASTERDIR`, do so before including `bsd.port.pre.mk`.

Here are some examples of things you can write after `bsd.port.pre.mk`:

```
# no need to compile lang/perl5 if perl5 is already in system
.if ${OSVERSION} > 300003
BROKEN=      perl is in system
.endif
```

You did remember to use `tab` instead of `spaces` after `BROKEN=` and `:-`).

12.7 Use the `exec` Statement in Wrapper Scripts

If the port installs a shell script whose purpose is to launch another program, and if launching that program is the last action performed by the script, make sure to launch the program using the `exec` statement, for instance:

```
#!/bin/sh
exec %%LOCALBASE%%/bin/java -jar %%DATADIR%%/foo.jar "$@"
```

The `exec` statement replaces the shell process with the specified program. If `exec` is omitted, the shell process remains in memory while the program is executing, and needlessly consumes system resources.

12.8 Do Things Rationally

The `Makefile` should do things simply and reasonably. If you can make it a couple of lines shorter or more readable, then do so. Examples include using a `make .if` construct instead of a shell `if` construct, not redefining

`do-extract` if you can redefine `EXTRACT*` instead, and using `GNU_CONFIGURE` instead of `CONFIGURE_ARGS += --prefix=${PREFIX}`.

If you find yourself having to write a lot of new code to try to do something, please go back and review `bsd.port.mk` to see if it contains an existing implementation of what you are trying to do. While hard to read, there are a great many seemingly-hard problems for which `bsd.port.mk` already provides a shorthand solution.

12.9 Respect Both `CC` and `CXX`

The port must respect both `CC` and `CXX` variables. What we mean by this is that the port must not set the values of these variables absolutely, overriding existing values; instead, it may append whatever values it needs to the existing values. This is so that build options that affect all ports can be set globally.

If the port does not respect these variables, please add `NO_PACKAGE=ignores` either `CC` or `CXX` to the `Makefile`.

An example of a `Makefile` respecting both `CC` and `CXX` variables follows. Note the `+=`:

```
CC?= gcc
CXX?= g++
```

Here is an example which respects neither `CC` nor `CXX` variables:

```
CC= gcc
CXX= g++
```

Both `CC` and `CXX` variables can be defined on FreeBSD systems in `/etc/make.conf`. The first example defines a value if it was not previously set in `/etc/make.conf`, preserving any system-wide definitions. The second example clobbers anything previously defined.

12.10 Respect `CFLAGS`

The port must respect the `CFLAGS` variable. What we mean by this is that the port must not set the value of this variable absolutely, overriding the existing value; instead, it may append whatever values it needs to the existing value. This is so that build options that affect all ports can be set globally.

If it does not, please add `NO_PACKAGE=ignores` `cflags` to the `Makefile`.

An example of a `Makefile` respecting the `CFLAGS` variable follows. Note the `+=`:

```
CFLAGS+= -Wall -Werror
```

Here is an example which does not respect the `CFLAGS` variable:

```
CFLAGS= -Wall -Werror
```

The `CFLAGS` variable is defined on FreeBSD systems in `/etc/make.conf`. The first example appends additional flags to the `CFLAGS` variable, preserving any system-wide definitions. The second example clobbers anything previously defined.

You should remove optimization flags from the third party Makefiles. System CFLAGS contains system-wide optimization flags. An example from an unmodified Makefile:

```
CFLAGS= -O3 -funroll-loops -DHAVE_SOUND
```

Using system optimization flags, the Makefile would look similar to the following example:

```
CFLAGS+= -DHAVE_SOUND
```

12.11 Threading Libraries

The threading library must be linked to the binaries using a special flag `-pthread` on FreeBSD. If a port insists on linking `-lpthread` directly, patch it to use `-pthread`.

Note: If building the port errors out with unrecognized option `'-pthread'`, it may be desirable to use `cc` as linker by setting `CONFIGURE_ENV` to `LD=${CC}`. The `-pthread` option is not supported by `ld` directly.

12.12 Feedback

Do send applicable changes/patches to the original author/maintainer for inclusion in next release of the code. This will only make your job that much easier for the next release.

12.13 README.html

Do not include the `README.html` file. This file is not part of the SVN collection but is generated using the `make readme` command.

Note: If `make readme` fails, make sure that the default value of `ECHO_MSG` has not been modified by the port.

12.14 Marking a Port Not Installable with **BROKEN**, **FORBIDDEN**, or **IGNORE**

In certain cases users should be prevented from installing a port. To tell a user that a port should not be installed, there are several `make` variables that can be used in a port's Makefile. The value of the following `make` variables will be the reason that is given back to users for why the port refuses to install itself. Please use the correct `make` variable as each `make` variable conveys radically different meanings to both users, and to automated systems that depend on the Makefiles, such as the ports build cluster, FreshPorts, and portsmon.

12.14.1 Variables

- `BROKEN` is reserved for ports that currently do not compile, install, or deinstall correctly. It should be used for ports where the problem is believed to be temporary.

If instructed, the build cluster will still attempt to try to build them to see if the underlying problem has been resolved. (However, in general, the cluster is run without this.)

For instance, use `BROKEN` when a port:

- does not compile
 - fails its configuration or installation process
 - installs files outside of `${LOCALBASE}`
 - does not remove all its files cleanly upon deinstall (however, it may be acceptable, and desirable, for the port to leave user-modified files behind)
- `FORBIDDEN` is used for ports that contain a security vulnerability or induce grave concern regarding the security of a FreeBSD system with a given port installed (e.g., a reputedly insecure program or a program that provides easily exploitable services). Ports should be marked as `FORBIDDEN` as soon as a particular piece of software has a vulnerability and there is no released upgrade. Ideally ports should be upgraded as soon as possible when a security vulnerability is discovered so as to reduce the number of vulnerable FreeBSD hosts (we like being known for being secure), however sometimes there is a noticeable time gap between disclosure of a vulnerability and an updated release of the vulnerable software. Do not mark a port `FORBIDDEN` for any reason other than security.
 - `IGNORE` is reserved for ports that should not be built for some other reason. It should be used for ports where the problem is believed to be structural. The build cluster will not, under any circumstances, build ports marked as `IGNORE`. For instance, use `IGNORE` when a port:
 - compiles but does not run properly
 - does not work on the installed version of FreeBSD
 - requires FreeBSD kernel sources to build, but the user does not have them installed
 - has a distfile which may not be automatically fetched due to licensing restrictions
 - does not work with some other currently installed port (for instance, the port depends on `www/apache20` but `www/apache22` is installed)

Note: If a port would conflict with a currently installed port (for example, if they install a file in the same place that performs a different function), use `CONFLICTS` instead. `CONFLICTS` will set `IGNORE` by itself.

- If a port should be marked `IGNORE` only on certain architectures, there are two other convenience variables that will automatically set `IGNORE` for you: `ONLY_FOR_ARCHS` and `NOT_FOR_ARCHS`. Examples:

```
ONLY_FOR_ARCHS= i386 amd64
```

```
NOT_FOR_ARCHS= ia64 sparc64
```

A custom `IGNORE` message can be set using `ONLY_FOR_ARCHS_REASON` and `NOT_FOR_ARCHS_REASON`. Per architecture entries are possible with `ONLY_FOR_ARCHS_REASON_ARCH` and `NOT_FOR_ARCHS_REASON_ARCH`.

- If a port fetches i386 binaries and installs them, `IA32_BINARY_PORT` should be set. If this variable is set, it will be checked whether the `/usr/lib32` directory is available for IA32 versions of libraries and whether the kernel has IA32 compatibility compiled in. If one of these two dependencies is not satisfied, `IGNORE` will be set automatically.

12.14.2 Implementation Notes

The strings should not be quoted. Also, the wording of the string should be somewhat different due to the way the information is shown to the user. Examples:

```
BROKEN= this port is unsupported on FreeBSD 5.x
```

```
IGNORE= is unsupported on FreeBSD 5.x
```

resulting in the following output from `make describe`:

```
==>  foobar-0.1 is marked as broken: this port is unsupported on FreeBSD 5.x.
```

```
==>  foobar-0.1 is unsupported on FreeBSD 5.x.
```

12.15 Marking a Port for Removal with `DEPRECATED` or `EXPIRATION_DATE`

Do remember that `BROKEN` and `FORBIDDEN` are to be used as a temporary resort if a port is not working. Permanently broken ports should be removed from the tree entirely.

When it makes sense to do so, users can be warned about a pending port removal with `DEPRECATED` and `EXPIRATION_DATE`. The former is simply a string stating why the port is scheduled for removal; the latter is a string in ISO 8601 format (YYYY-MM-DD). Both will be shown to the user.

It is possible to set `DEPRECATED` without an `EXPIRATION_DATE` (for instance, recommending a newer version of the port), but the converse does not make any sense.

There is no set policy on how much notice to give. Current practice seems to be one month for security-related issues and two months for build issues. This also gives any interested committers a little time to fix the problems.

12.16 Avoid Use of the `.error` Construct

The correct way for a `Makefile` to signal that the port can not be installed due to some external factor (for instance, the user has specified an illegal combination of build options) is to set a non-blank value to `IGNORE`. This value will be formatted and shown to the user by `make install`.

It is a common mistake to use `.error` for this purpose. The problem with this is that many automated tools that work with the ports tree will fail in this situation. The most common occurrence of this is seen when trying to build `/usr/ports/INDEX` (see Section 9.1). However, even more trivial commands such as `make maintainer` also fail in this scenario. This is not acceptable.

Example 12-1. How to Avoid Using `.error`

Assume that someone has the line

```
USE_POINTYHAT=yes
```

in `make.conf`. The first of the next two Makefile snippets will cause `make index` to fail, while the second one will not:

```
.if USE_POINTYHAT
.error "POINTYHAT is not supported"
.endif
.if USE_POINTYHAT
IGNORE=          POINTYHAT is not supported
.endif
```

12.17 Usage of `sysctl`

The usage of `sysctl` is discouraged except in targets. This is because the evaluation of any `makevars`, such as used during `make index`, then has to run the command, further slowing down that process.

Usage of `sysctl(8)` should always be done with the `SYCTL` variable, as it contains the fully qualified path and can be overridden, if one has such a special need.

12.18 Rerolling Distfiles

Sometimes the authors of software change the content of released distfiles without changing the file's name. You have to verify that the changes are official and have been performed by the author. It has happened in the past that the distfile was silently altered on the download servers with the intent to cause harm or compromise end user security.

Put the old distfile aside, download the new one, unpack them and compare the content with `diff(1)`. If you see nothing suspicious, you can update `distinfo`. Be sure to summarize the differences in your PR or commit log, so that other people know that you have taken care to ensure that nothing bad has happened.

You might also want to contact the authors of the software and confirm the changes with them.

12.19 Avoiding Linuxisms

Do not use `/proc` if there are any other ways of getting the information, e.g., `setprogname(argv[0])` in `main()` and then `getprogname(3)` if you want to “know your name”.

Do not rely on behaviour that is undocumented by POSIX.

Do not record timestamps in the critical path of the application if it also works without. Getting timestamps may be slow, depending on the accuracy of timestamps in the OS. If timestamps are really needed, determine how precise they have to be and use an API which is documented to just deliver the needed precision.

A number of simple syscalls (for example `gettimeofday(2)`, `getpid(2)`) are much faster on Linux® than on any other operating system due to caching and the vsyscall performance optimizations. Do not rely on them being cheap in performance-critical applications. In general, try hard to avoid syscalls if possible.

Do not rely on Linux-specific socket behaviour. In particular, default socket buffer sizes are different (call `setsockopt(2)` with `SO_SNDBUF` and `SO_RCVBUF`, and while Linux's `send(2)` blocks when the socket buffer is full, FreeBSD's will fail and set `ENOBUFS` in `errno`).

If relying on non-standard behaviour is required, encapsulate it properly into a generic API, do a check for the behaviour in the configure stage, and stop if it is missing.

Check the man pages (<http://www.freebsd.org/cgi/man.cgi>) to see if the function used is a POSIX interface (in the "STANDARDS" section of the man page).

Do not assume that `/bin/sh` is **bash**. Ensure that a command line passed to `system(3)` will work with a POSIX compliant shell.

A list of common **bashisms** is available here (<https://wiki.ubuntu.com/DashAsBinSh>).

Do not `#include <stdint.h>` if `inttypes.h` is sufficient. This will ensure that the software builds on older versions of FreeBSD.

Check that headers are included in the POSIX or man page recommended way, e.g., `sys/types.h` is often forgotten, which is not as much of a problem for Linux as it is for FreeBSD.

Compile threaded applications with `“-pthread”`, not `“-lpthread”` or variations thereof.

12.20 Miscellanea

The files `pkg-descr` and `pkg-plist` should each be double-checked. If you are reviewing a port and feel they can be worded better, do so.

Do not copy more copies of the GNU General Public License into our system, please.

Please be careful to note any legal issues! Do not let us illegally distribute software!

Chapter 13 A Sample Makefile

Here is a sample Makefile that you can use to create a new port. Make sure you remove all the extra comments (ones between brackets)!

It is recommended that you follow this format (ordering of variables, empty lines between sections, etc.). This format is designed so that the most important information is easy to locate. We recommend that you use portlint to check the Makefile.

```
[the header...just to make it easier for us to identify the ports.]
# Created by: Satoshi Asami <asami@FreeBSD.org>
[The optional Created by: line names the person who originally
created the port. Note that the ":" is followed by a space
and not a tab character.
If this line is present, future maintainers should
not change or remove it except at the original author's request.]

# $FreeBSD$
[ ^^^^^^^^ This will be automatically replaced with RCS ID string by SVN
when it is committed to our repository. If upgrading a port, do not alter
this line back to "$FreeBSD$". SVN deals with it automatically.]

[section to describe the port itself and the master site - PORTNAME
and PORTVERSION are always first, followed by CATEGORIES,
and then MASTER_SITES, which can be followed by MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR.
PKGNAMEPREFIX and PKGNAMESUFFIX, if needed, will be after that.
Then comes DISTNAME, EXTRACT_SUFX and/or DISTFILES, and then
EXTRACT_ONLY, as necessary.]
PORTNAME=      xdvi
PORTVERSION=   18.2
CATEGORIES=    print
[do not forget the trailing slash ("/")!
 if you are not using MASTER_SITE_* macros]
MASTER_SITES=  ${MASTER_SITE_XCONTRIB}
MASTER_SITE_SUBDIR=  applications
PKGNAMEPREFIX= ja-
DISTNAME=      xdvi-pl18
[set this if the source is not in the standard ".tar.gz" form]
EXTRACT_SUFX=  .tar.Z

[section for distributed patches -- can be empty]
PATCH_SITES=  ftp://ftp.sra.co.jp/pub/X11/japanese/
PATCHFILES=   xdvi-18.patch1.gz xdvi-18.patch2.gz

[maintainer; *mandatory*! This is the person who is volunteering to
handle port updates, build breakages, and to whom a users can direct
questions and bug reports. To keep the quality of the Ports Collection
as high as possible, we no longer accept new ports that are assigned to
"ports@FreeBSD.org".]
MAINTAINER=    asami@FreeBSD.org
COMMENT=       A DVI Previewer for the X Window System
```

```

[dependencies -- can be empty]
RUN_DEPENDS=    gs:${PORTSDIR}/print/ghostscript
LIB_DEPENDS=    Xpm:${PORTSDIR}/graphics/xpm

[this section is for other standard bsd.port.mk variables that do not
 belong to any of the above]
[If it asks questions during configure, build, install...]
IS_INTERACTIVE=    yes
[If it extracts to a directory other than ${DISTNAME}...]
WRKSRC=            ${WRKDIR}/xdvi-new
[If the distributed patches were not made relative to ${WRKSRC}, you
 may need to tweak this]
PATCH_DIST_STRIP=    -p1
[If it requires a "configure" script generated by GNU autoconf to be run]
GNU_CONFIGURE=    yes
[If it requires GNU make, not /usr/bin/make, to build...]
USE_GMAKE=        yes
[If it is an X application and requires "xmkmf -a" to be run...]
USE_IMAKE=        yes
[et cetera.]

[non-standard variables to be used in the rules below]
MY_FAVORITE_RESPONSE= "yeah, right"

[then the special rules, in the order they are called]
pre-fetch:
    i go fetch something, yeah

post-patch:
    i need to do something after patch, great

pre-install:
    and then some more stuff before installing, wow

[and then the epilogue]
.include <bsd.port.mk>

```


Chapter 14 Keeping Up

The FreeBSD Ports Collection is constantly changing. Here is some information on how to keep up.

14.1 FreshPorts

One of the easiest ways to learn about updates that have already been committed is by subscribing to FreshPorts (<http://www.FreshPorts.org/>). You can select multiple ports to monitor. Maintainers are strongly encouraged to subscribe, because they will receive notification of not only their own changes, but also any changes that any other FreeBSD committer has made. (These are often necessary to keep up with changes in the underlying ports framework—although it would be most polite to receive an advance heads-up from those committing such changes, sometimes this is overlooked or just simply impractical. Also, in some cases, the changes are very minor in nature. We expect everyone to use their best judgement in these cases.)

If you wish to use FreshPorts, all you need is an account. If your registered email address is `@FreeBSD.org`, you will see the opt-in link on the right hand side of the webpages. For those of you who already have a FreshPorts account, but are not using your `@FreeBSD.org` email address, just change your email to `@FreeBSD.org`, subscribe, then change it back again.

FreshPorts also has a sanity test feature which automatically tests each commit to the FreeBSD ports tree. If subscribed to this service, you will be notified of any errors which FreshPorts detects during sanity testing of your commits.

14.2 The Web Interface to the Source Repository

It is possible to browse the files in the source repository by using a web interface. Changes that affect the entire port system are now documented in the CHANGES (<http://svnweb.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/CHANGES>) file. Changes that affect individual ports are now documented in the UPDATING (<http://svnweb.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/UPDATING>) file. However, the definitive answer to any question is undoubtedly to read the source code of `bsd.port.mk` (<http://svnweb.FreeBSD.org/ports/head/Mk/bsd.port.mk>), and associated files.

14.3 The FreeBSD Ports Mailing List

If you maintain ports, you should consider following the FreeBSD ports mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports>). Important changes to the way ports work will be announced there, and then committed to CHANGES.

If this mailing list is too high volume you may consider following FreeBSD ports announce mailing list (<http://lists.FreeBSD.org/mailman/listinfo/freebsd-ports-announce>) which is moderated and has no discussion.

14.4 The FreeBSD Port Building Cluster on `pointyhat.FreeBSD.org`

One of the least-publicized strengths of FreeBSD is that an entire cluster of machines is dedicated to continually building the Ports Collection, for each of the major OS releases and for each Tier-1 architecture. You can find the

results of these builds at package building logs and errors (<http://pointyhat.FreeBSD.org/>).

Individual ports are built unless they are specifically marked with `IGNORE`. Ports that are marked with `BROKEN` will still be attempted, to see if the underlying problem has been resolved. (This is done by passing `TRYBROKEN` to the port's `Makefile`.)

14.5 Portscout: the FreeBSD Ports Distfile Scanner

The build cluster is dedicated to building the latest release of each port with distfiles that have already been fetched. However, as the Internet continually changes, distfiles can quickly go missing. Portscout (<http://portscout.FreeBSD.org>), the FreeBSD Ports distfile scanner, attempts to query every download site for every port to find out if each distfile is still available. **Portscout** can generate HTML reports and send emails about newly available ports to those who request them. Unless not otherwise subscribed, maintainers are asked to check periodically for changes, either by hand or using the RSS feed.

Portscout's first page gives the email address of the port maintainer, the number of ports the maintainer is responsible for, the number of those ports with new distfiles, and the percentage of those ports that are out-of-date. The search function allows for searching by email address for a specific maintainer, and for selecting whether or not only out-of-date ports should be shown.

Upon clicking on a maintainer's email address, a list of all of their ports is displayed, along with port category, current version number, whether or not there is a new version, when the port was last updated, and finally when it was last checked. A search function on this page allows the user to search for a specific port.

Clicking on a port name in the list displays the FreshPorts (<http://freshports.org>) port information.

14.6 The FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System

Another handy resource is the FreeBSD Ports Monitoring System (<http://portsmon.FreeBSD.org>) (also known as `portsmon`). This system comprises a database that processes information from several sources and allows it to be browsed via a web interface. Currently, the ports Problem Reports (PRs), the error logs from the build cluster, and individual files from the ports collection are used. In the future, this will be expanded to include the distfile survey, as well as other sources.

To get started, you can view all information about a particular port by using the Overview of One Port (<http://portsmon.FreeBSD.org/portoverview.py>).

As of this writing, this is the only resource available that maps GNATS PR entries to portnames. (PR submitters do not always include the portname in their Synopsis, although we would prefer that they did.) So, `portsmon` is a good place to start if you want to find out whether an existing port has any PRs filed against it and/or any build errors; or, to find out if a new port that you may be thinking about creating has already been submitted.

Chapter 15 Appendices

15.1 Values of USES

Table 15-1. Values of USES

Feature	Arguments	Description
bison	none, build, run, both	Implies that the port will use bison. The port will use devel/bison in the build phase. By default, with no arguments, the port will use bison as a build-time dependency. run implies a run-time dependency on bison and both implies a build-time dependency on bison.
cmake	none, outsource	The port will use cmake for configuring and building. outsource argument implies out-of-source building will be performed. For more information, see Section 6.3.4.
fuse	none	Implies the port will use the FUSE library and has a dependency on the fuse package depending on the platform (FreeBSD).
pathfix	none	Look for the Makefile configuration files in the associated source directory paths to make sure the FreeBSD hierarchy is correct.
qmail	none, build, run, both, vars	Implies that the port will use mail/qmail in the build phase. With the build argument, qmail as a build-time dependency. run implies a run-time dependency. Using no argument implies a build-time dependency. argument implies a build-time dependency. only set QMAIL variable in the port to use.

Feature	Arguments	Description
zenoss	none	Implies the port u net-mgmt/zeno another, but large building zenoss r ports.